



Lamentations

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	9
Introduction to Lamentations	9
Lamentations 1 General Notes	18
Lamentations 1:1-2	19
Lamentations 1:3	21
Lamentations 1:4-5	23
Lamentations 1:6	25
Lamentations 1:7	27
Lamentations 1:8-9	29
Lamentations 1:10	31
Lamentations 1:11-12	33
Lamentations 1:13-14	35
Lamentations 1:15	37
Lamentations 1:16-17	39
Lamentations 1:18-19	41
Lamentations 1:20	43
Lamentations 1:21-22	45
Lamentations 2 General Notes	47
Lamentations 2:1-2	48
Lamentations 2:3-4	50
Lamentations 2:5-6	52
Lamentations 2:7	54
Lamentations 2:8-9	56
Lamentations 2:10	58
Lamentations 2:11-12	59
Lamentations 2:13-14	61
Lamentations 2:15-16	63
Lamentations 2:17	65
Lamentations 2:18-19	67
Lamentations 2:20	69
Lamentations 2:21-22	70
Lamentations 3 General Notes	72
Lamentations 3:1-4	73
Lamentations 3:5-8	75
Lamentations 3:9-11	77
Lamentations 3:12-15	78
Lamentations 3:16-18	80
Lamentations 3:19-21	82
Lamentations 3:22-24	83
Lamentations 3:25-29	84

Table of Contents

Lamentations 3:30-33	86
Lamentations 3:34-36	88
Lamentations 3:37-39	89
Lamentations 3:40-43	90
Lamentations 3:44-47	92
Lamentations 3:48-50	94
Lamentations 3:51-54	95
Lamentations 3:55-57	97
Lamentations 3:58-61	99
Lamentations 3:62-63	101
Lamentations 3:64-66	102
Lamentations 4 General Notes	103
Lamentations 4:1-2	104
Lamentations 4:3	106
Lamentations 4:4-5	107
Lamentations 4:6	108
Lamentations 4:7-8	109
Lamentations 4:9-10	111
Lamentations 4:11	113
Lamentations 4:12-13	114
Lamentations 4:14-15	116
Lamentations 4:16	118
Lamentations 4:17-18	119
Lamentations 4:19-20	121
Lamentations 4:21-22	123
Lamentations 5 General Notes	125
Lamentations 5:1-4	126
Lamentations 5:5-7	128
Lamentations 5:8-10	130
Lamentations 5:11-12	132
Lamentations 5:13-14	133
Lamentations 5:15-16	134
Lamentations 5:17-18	135
Lamentations 5:19-22	136
translationQuestions	138
Lamentations 1	138
Lamentations 2	141
Lamentations 3	143
Lamentations 4	146
Lamentations 5	150
translationWords	152
adversary, enemy	152
afflict, affliction	153

altar	154
angry, anger	155
anoint, anointed	156
assembly, assemble	157
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	158
astray, go astray, led astray, stray	159
avenge, revenge, vengeance	160
to bear	161
believe, believe in, belief	162
betray, betrayer	163
blood	164
bind, bond, bound	165
bow, bow down	167
bow and arrow	168
bread	169
breathe, breath	170
call, calling, called, call out	172
captive, captivity	174
Translation Suggestions	175
children, child	176
comfort, comforter	177
command, to command, commandment	178
compassion, compassionate	179
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	180
crown, to crown	181
curse, cursed	182
cut off	183
darkness	184
Daughter of Zion	185
death, die, dead	186
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	188
defile, be defiled	189
desert, wilderness	190
desolate, desolation	191
devour	192
disgrace, disgraceful	193
dishonor, dishonorable	194
drunk, drunkard	195
eagle	196
earth, earthly	197
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	198
Egypt, Egyptian	199
elder	200

Table of Contents

endure, endurance	201
evil, wicked, wickedness	202
exile, the Exile	204
face	205
faith	207
faithful, faithfulness	209
false god, foreign god, god, goddess	210
famine	211
ancestor, father, forefather	212
favor, favorable, favoritism	213
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	214
feast	215
fire	216
flesh	217
fool, foolish, folly	218
footstool	219
foreigner, foreign, alien	220
forever	221
forsake, forsaken, forsook	222
foundation, founded	223
fruit, fruitful	224
fulfill	226
gate, gate bar	227
generation	228
Gentile	229
God	230
gold	232
good, goodness	233
grain	235
grape	236
guilt, guilty	237
hand, right hand, to hand over	238
head	240
heal, cure	242
heart	243
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	244
holy, holiness	245
honor, to honor	246
hope	247
house of God, Yahweh's house	248
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	249
iniquity	251
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	252

Jacob, Israel	253
Jerusalem	254
joy, joyful	256
Judah	257
judge, judgment	258
just, justice, justly	260
kingdom	261
Judah, kingdom of Judah	263
king	265
lament, lamentation	266
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	267
life, live, living, alive	269
light	271
lion	272
lord, master, sir	273
Lord	274
lover	275
mercy, merciful	276
mighty, might	278
mind	279
mock, ridicule, scoff at	280
Most High	281
mourn, mourning	282
name	283
nation	284
on high, in the highest	285
oppress, oppression, oppressor	286
palace	287
pardon	288
peace, peaceful	289
people group, peoples, the people, a people	290
perfect	292
perish, perishing, perishable	293
pit	294
pray, prayer	295
precious	296
priest, priesthood	297
prince, princess	299
proclaim, proclamation	300
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	301
punish, punishment	303
rage	305
rebel, rebellious, rebellion	306

Table of Contents

receive	307
reign	308
reject	309
rejoice	310
repent, repentance	311
rest	312
restore, restoration	313
reveal, revelation	314
righteous, righteousness	315
right hand	316
rod	317
ruler, rulers, rule	318
Sabbath	319
sackcloth	320
salvation	321
sanctuary	322
save, safe	323
seize	325
servant, slave, slavery	326
shame, shameful, ashamed	328
siege, besiege	329
silver	330
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	331
slaughter	333
snow	334
Sodom	335
strength, strengthen	336
stronghold, fortress, fortified	338
sword	339
tabernacle	340
temple	341
tempt, temptation	343
tent	344
terror, terrify	345
test	346
throne	347
torment	348
transgress, transgression	349
trial	350
true, truth, come true	351
turn, turn away, turn back	353
unclean	354
unfaithful, unfaithfulness	355

virgin	356
vision	357
voice	358
walk	359
watch, watchman	360
well, cistern	361
wine, wineskin, new wine	362
winepress	363
woe	364
word	365
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	366
wrath, fury	367
Yahweh	368
yoke	370
Zion, Mount Zion	371
translationAcademy	372
Abstract Nouns	372
Active or Passive	375
Apostrophe	378
Double Negatives	380
Doublet	383
Ellipsis	385
Euphemism	387
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	389
Hyperbole	391
Hypothetical Situations	394
Idiom	397
Irony	399
Merism	402
Metaphor	404
Metonymy	409
Parallelism	411
Personification	413
Rhetorical Question	415
Simile	418
Synecdoche	421
Biblical Money	423
How to Translate Names	425
Translate Unknowns	429
Poetry	432

translationNotes

Introduction to Lamentations

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Lamentations

1. First lament: Jerusalem is captured and has been abandoned by Yahweh and its people (1:1–22)
2. Second lament: Yahweh has caused this destruction because he was angry with Jerusalem (2:1–22)
3. Third lament
 - a) The city sorrows over its destruction (3:1–20)
 - b) There is comfort for those who will turn back to Yahweh (3:21–39)
 - c) Judah is learning to return to Yahweh (3:40–54)
 - d) Judah cries out for vengeance upon its enemies (3:55–66)
4. Fourth lament: The terrors of the siege of Jerusalem
 - a) The punishment of Jerusalem was caused by the people's sin (4:1–20)
 - b) This punishment had satisfied Yahweh's wrath for their sin (4:21–22a)
 - c) Edom will be punished also (4:22b)
5. Fifth lament: the broken nation cries out to Yahweh in confession, petition, and in praise of him (5:1–22)

What is the Book of Lamentations about?

This book expresses grief over the capture of the city of Jerusalem by the Babylonians about 586 BC. The book is organized into five poems. In them the writer speaks of the people's sin and unfaithfulness to God that led to their destruction. However, he also remembers God's faithfulness for those who turn back to him. (See: **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, unfaithful, unfaithfulness** and **faith**)

Who wrote the Book of Lamentations?

The name of the author of Lamentations is not given in the text, but it became traditional to say that the author was Jeremiah. It is fitting that a lament was made over the fall and destruction of Jerusalem. The eyewitness nature of the laments seems to fit closely with the book of Jeremiah. Certainly the serious and grieving tone of Jeremiah is carried into the book of Lamentations, and there is nothing to suggest that Jeremiah was not the author.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may call the book “Poems of sadness.” If translators want to keep to the traditional view that the prophet Jeremiah wrote this book, they might decide on a title such as “The sad sayings of Jeremiah.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**Did God abandon Israel?**

Jeremiah often uses the imagery of abandonment in Lamentations, but this does not mean that God had completely given up on Israel. In fact, God remained faithful to his covenant promises. He rejected Israel for a period of time as the special place where he would be present.

While it was common in the ancient Near East to think that a god might leave his city, he usually did so because he was too weak to defend it. In Lamentations, Yahweh abandons Jerusalem because of the people’s sinfulness, not because of any weakness on his part. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

What is a funeral song?

It is common for cultures to sing songs at a funeral or when someone has died. Depending on the culture, these songs can sound either happy or sad. Lamentations is somewhat reminiscent of a sad song sung at a funeral. Some have said that the rhythm of the poem in Hebrew makes the poems sound as they are slow or sluggish, like a funeral procession.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues**What style of writing is Lamentations?**

Lamentations is a collection of five poems. These laments may have been sung or chanted by the Jewish exiles living in captivity in Babylon, and also by those Jews who remained in Jerusalem after its conquest. In Chapters 1, 2, and 4, each line of the poem begins with a different Hebrew letter in alphabetical order. The third chapter repeats three lines with the same letter followed by the next three lines beginning with next letter in alphabetical order.

Who are the woman and the man in Lamentations?

The author uses the image of an abandoned woman and a persecuted man to represent Judah and Jerusalem. This is a type of personification used to make the pain more understandable to the reader. (See: [Personification](#))

List of translationAcademy Topics in Lamentations

* [Personification](#) is found in: [02:05](#)

- * **Abstract Nouns** is found in: 01:03, 01:07, 01:18, 03:58
- * **Active or Passive** is found in: 01:11, 02:05, 04:06, 04:07, 04:09, 04:19, 05:01
- * **Apostrophe** is found in: 02:18
- * **Doublet** is found in: 01:01, 01:11, 03:19, 03:40, 03:44, 04:12, 04:21
- * **Ellipsis** is found in: 05:01
- * **Euphemism** is found in: 04:17, 05:05
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 02:10, 04:07
- * **Hyperbole** is found in: 03:12
- * **Hypothetical Situations** is found in: 05:19
- * **Idiom** is found in: 01:08, 01:10, 01:11, 02:03, 02:11, 03:05, 03:12, 03:19, 03:25, 03:30, 03:51, 03:62, 04:01, 04:09, 04:11, 04:16, 05:01, 05:05, 05:19
- * **Irony** is found in: 02:07
- * **Merism** is found in: 02:18, 02:21, 03:62, 04:12
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 01:01, 01:13, 01:15, 01:20, 02:01, 02:03, 02:08, 02:15, 02:20, 03:01, 03:05, 03:09, 03:12, 03:16, 03:25, 03:34, 03:40, 03:44, 03:48, 03:51, 03:58, 04:01, 04:07, 04:09, 04:11, 04:14, 04:19, 04:21, 05:01
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 01:03, 01:07, 01:13, 02:01, 02:03, 02:07, 02:11, 02:15, 02:17, 02:21, 03:05, 03:37, 03:51, 03:55, 03:62, 03:64, 04:06, 04:12, 04:17, 05:05, 05:08, 05:15, 05:19
- * **Parallelism** is found in: 03:16, 03:25, 03:58, 04:11, 04:12, 05:11
- * **Personification** is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:04, 01:06, 01:08, 01:10, 01:11, 01:13, 01:15, 01:16, 01:18, 01:20, 01:21, 02:01, 02:03, 02:08, 02:10, 02:13, 02:15, 02:18, 04:03, 04:06, 04:21
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:11, 02:13, 02:15, 02:20, 05:19
- * **Simile** is found in: 01:01, 01:06, 01:08, 02:21
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:18, 01:20, 02:08, 02:18, 03:64, 04:09, 04:17
- * **Poetry** is found in: 02:01, 03:01

List of translationWords in Lamentations

- * **adversary, enemy** is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 01:07, 01:08, 01:10, 01:16, 01:21, 02:03, 02:15, 02:17, 02:21, 03:44, 03:51, 04:12
- * **afflict, affliction** is found in: 01:03, 01:07, 01:08, 03:19
- * **altar** is found in: 02:07
- * **angry, anger** is found in: 01:11, 02:01, 03:40, 04:11, 05:19
- * **anoint, anointed** is found in: 04:19

- * **assembly, assemble** is found in: 01:10, 01:15, 02:05, 02:21
- * **Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire** is found in: 05:05
- * **astray, go astray, led astray, stray** is found in: 03:19
- * **avenge, revenge, vengeance** is found in: 03:58
- * **to bear** is found in: 03:25
- * **believe, believe in, belief** is found in: 04:12
- * **betray, betrayer** is found in: 01:01
- * **blood** is found in: 04:12, 04:14
- * **bind, bond, bound** is found in: 01:13
- * **bow, bow down** is found in: 03:19
- * **bow and arrow** is found in: 02:03, 03:12
- * **bread** is found in: 01:11, 04:04, 05:08
- * **breathe, breath** is found in: 04:19
- * **call, calling, called, call out** is found in: 03:55
- * **captive, captivity** is found in: 01:04, 01:18, 03:34
- * **children, child** is found in: 01:16, 02:18, 04:09
- * **comfort, comforter** is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 01:16, 01:21, 02:13
- * **command, to command, commandment** is found in: 01:10, 01:16, 01:18, 03:37
- * **compassion, compassionate** is found in: 02:01, 02:17, 02:21, 03:30, 04:09
- * **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love** is found in: 03:22
- * **crown, to crown** is found in: 05:15
- * **curse, cursed** is found in: 03:64
- * **cut off** is found in: 02:03, 03:51
- * **darkness** is found in: 03:01, 03:05
- * **Daughter of Zion** is found in: 01:06, 04:21
- * **death, die, dead** is found in: 01:20, 03:05
- * **deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive** is found in: 02:13
- * **defile, be defiled** is found in: 04:14
- * **desert, wilderness** is found in: 04:03, 04:19, 05:08
- * **desolate, desolation** is found in: 01:04, 01:13, 01:16, 03:09, 03:44
- * **devour** is found in: 02:03, 04:11

- * disgrace, disgraceful is found in: 02:01, 03:30
- * dishonor, dishonorable is found in: 02:01
- * drunk, drunkard is found in: 04:21
- * eagle is found in: 04:19
- * earth, earthly is found in: 02:01, 03:34, 04:12
- * Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 04:21
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 05:05
- * elder is found in: 01:18, 02:10, 04:16, 05:11, 05:13
- * endure, endurance is found in: 03:16
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 01:21
- * exile, the Exile is found in: 04:21
- * face is found in: 02:18, 03:34, 05:08
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 03:22
- * famine is found in: 05:08
- * ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 05:05
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 04:16
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 03:44, 03:55, 03:64
- * feast is found in: 01:04
- * fire is found in: 01:13, 02:03, 04:11
- * flesh is found in: 03:01
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 02:13
- * footstool is found in: 02:01
- * foreigner, foreign, alien is found in: 04:14, 05:01
- * forever is found in: 03:30, 05:19
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 05:19
- * foundation, founded is found in: 04:11
- * fruit, fruitful is found in: 02:20
- * fulfill is found in: 02:17
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 01:04, 02:08, 04:12, 05:13
- * generation is found in: 05:19
- * Gentile is found in: 02:08, 04:14

- * God is found in: 03:40
- * gold is found in: 04:01
- * good, goodness is found in: 03:25
- * grain is found in: 02:11
- * grape is found in: 01:15
- * guilt, guilty is found in: 04:21
- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 01:07, 01:10, 01:13, 02:07, 02:08, 03:01, 03:64, 05:05, 05:08
- * head is found in: 02:18, 04:01
- * heal, cure is found in: 02:13
- * heart is found in: 01:20, 01:21, 02:18, 03:19, 03:30, 03:40, 03:64, 05:15, 05:17
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 02:01, 03:40, 03:48, 03:64, 04:19
- * holy, holiness is found in: 04:01
- * honor, to honor is found in: 01:08, 05:11
- * hope is found in: 03:16, 03:25
- * house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 02:07
- * inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 03:22, 05:01
- * iniquity is found in: 02:13, 04:06, 04:12
- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 02:01
- * Jacob, Israel is found in: 01:16, 02:01
- * Jerusalem is found in: 01:07, 01:08, 01:16, 02:10, 02:15, 04:12
- * joy, joyful is found in: 02:15, 05:15
- * Judah is found in: 01:03, 02:01
- * judge, judgment is found in: 03:58
- * just, justice, justly is found in: 03:34, 03:58
- * king is found in: 02:05, 02:08, 04:12, 04:19
- * kingdom is found in: 02:01
- * Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 01:15, 05:11
- * lament, lamentation is found in: 02:05, 02:08
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 02:08
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:11, 01:16, 02:11, 02:18, 03:16, 03:25, 03:51, 05:08
- * light is found in: 03:01

- * lion is found in: 03:09
- * lord, master, sir is found in: 01:04
- * Lord is found in: 01:13, 01:15, 02:01, 02:07, 02:18, 03:30, 03:34, 03:58
- * lover is found in: 01:01
- * mercy, merciful is found in: 03:22
- * mighty, might is found in: 01:15
- * mind is found in: 01:07, 03:19, 05:01
- * mock, ridicule, scoff at is found in: 02:15, 03:44, 03:62
- * Most High is found in: 03:34
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 01:04, 02:05, 05:15
- * name is found in: 03:55
- * nation is found in: 01:01, 01:10, 04:17, 04:19
- * on high, in the highest is found in: 01:13
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 03:30, 03:58
- * palace is found in: 02:05
- * pardon is found in: 03:40
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 03:16
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 01:01, 01:18, 02:03, 02:11, 03:12, 03:44, 04:03
- * perfect is found in: 02:15
- * perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 01:18, 03:16
- * pit is found in: 03:44, 03:55, 04:19
- * pray, prayer is found in: 03:05, 03:40, 03:44
- * precious is found in: 01:07, 01:10, 01:11, 02:03, 04:01
- * priest, priesthood is found in: 01:04, 01:18, 02:05, 02:20, 04:12
- * prince, princess is found in: 01:01, 01:06, 02:01, 02:08, 05:11
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 02:17
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 02:08, 02:13, 02:20, 04:12
- * punish, punishment is found in: 03:37, 04:21
- * rage is found in: 04:11
- * rebel, rebellious, rebellion is found in: 01:18, 01:20, 03:40
- * receive is found in: 04:16

- * **reign** is found in: 05:19
- * **reject** is found in: 02:07, 03:30, 05:19
- * **rejoice** is found in: 01:21, 02:17, 04:21
- * **repent, repentance** is found in: 05:19
- * **rest** is found in: 01:03, 05:05
- * **restore, restoration** is found in: 01:16, 02:13, 05:19
- * **reveal, revelation** is found in: 02:13
- * **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 01:18, 04:12
- * **right hand** is found in: 02:03
- * **rod** is found in: 03:01
- * **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 05:08
- * **Sabbath** is found in: 02:05
- * **sackcloth** is found in: 02:10
- * **salvation** is found in: 03:25
- * **sanctuary** is found in: 01:10, 02:07, 02:20
- * **save, safe** is found in: 03:58, 04:17
- * **seize** is found in: 04:06
- * **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 01:01, 05:08
- * **shame, shameful, ashamed** is found in: 05:01
- * **siege, besiege** is found in: 03:05
- * **silver** is found in: 05:01
- * **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 01:04, 01:08, 04:06, 04:12, 04:21, 05:05, 05:15
- * **slaughter** is found in: 02:03, 02:20, 02:21, 03:40
- * **snow** is found in: 04:07
- * **Sodom** is found in: 04:06
- * **strength, strengthen** is found in: 02:17
- * **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 02:01
- * **sword** is found in: 01:20, 02:21, 04:09, 05:08
- * **tabernacle** is found in: 02:05
- * **tempt, temptation** is found in: 02:13
- * **tent** is found in: 02:03

- * **terror, terrify** is found in: 02:21
- * **test** is found in: 03:40
- * **throne** is found in: 05:19
- * **torment** is found in: 01:11, 01:21, 03:30
- * **transgress, transgression** is found in: 01:13, 01:21, 03:40
- * **trial** is found in: 03:58
- * **true, truth, come true** is found in: 05:19
- * **turn, turn away, turn back** is found in: 01:13, 05:19
- * **unclean** is found in: 01:08, 04:14
- * **virgin** is found in: 01:04, 01:15, 01:18, 02:10, 02:13, 02:21, 05:11
- * **vision** is found in: 02:08, 02:13
- * **voice** is found in: 03:55
- * **walk** is found in: 03:01
- * **watch, watchman** is found in: 02:18
- * **well, cistern** is found in: 03:51
- * **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 02:11
- * **winepress** is found in: 01:15
- * **woe** is found in: 05:15
- * **word** is found in: 02:17
- * **worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless** is found in: 01:11, 04:17
- * **wrath, fury** is found in: 02:01, 02:21, 03:01
- * **Yahweh** is found in: 01:04, 01:08, 01:16, 01:18, 02:05, 02:08, 02:17, 02:21, 03:01, 03:16, 03:25, 03:40, 03:55, 03:58, 04:11, 04:16, 04:19, 05:01, 05:19
- * **yoke** is found in: 01:13, 03:25
- * **Zion, Mount Zion** is found in: 01:04, 01:16, 02:01, 02:08, 02:13, 02:18, 04:01, 04:11, 05:11, 05:17

Lamentations 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Judah destroyed for her sin

Judah used to be great, but was now a slave. The temple stripped of all its valuables. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [temple](#))

Links:

- [Lamentations 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)

Lamentations 1:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Jerusalem was once full of people,

but now it is completely deserted.

Once it was a powerful nation,

but now it is alone, like a widow.

Once everyone in the world honored it like a king's daughter,

but now it is like a slave.

² We in the city weep bitterly all during the nights,

with tears flowing down our cheeks.

We did not trust Yahweh to help us, and the people groups that we did trust failed to help us;

none of those people comfort us now.

All the people groups that were friends with us have betrayed us;

they are all now our enemies.

ULB:

1 ¹ The city that once was full of people is now sitting all alone.

She has become like a widow, though she was a mighty nation.

She was a princess among the nations, but is now forced into slavery.

² She weeps and wails in the night, and her tears cover her cheeks.

None of her lovers comfort her.

All her friends have betrayed her. They have become her enemies.

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- prince, princess
- servant, slave, slavery

- [lover](#)
- [comfort, comforter](#)
- [betray, betrayer](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#).
- **She** - The writer of Lamentations writes about the city of Jerusalem as if it is a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **like a widow** - This phrase compares Jerusalem to a woman who is without protection because her husband has died. (See: [Simile](#))
- **She was a princess among the nations** - AT: “Other nations honored Jerusalem like they would honor the daughter of a king” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **forced into slavery** - AT: “forced to become a slave”
- **She weeps and wails** - The author describes Jerusalem as having emotions like a human being. The city also stands for her inhabitants. AT: “Those who live in her weep and wail.” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **weeps and wails** - The word “wails” refers to the sounds that a person makes when they “weep” loudly. AT: “weeps loudly.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:3**UDB:**

³ The people of Judah have become poor

and have suffered greatly.

Almost all of our people

were forced to leave our land.

We now live in another country

and we have no peace.

When the people Judah were unable to defend ourselves,

that was when our enemies captured us.

ULB:

³ After poverty and affliction, Judah has gone into exile.

She lives among the nations and finds no rest.

All her pursuers overtook her in her desperation.

translationWords:

- afflict, affliction
- Judah
- rest

translationNotes:

- **Judah has gone into exile** - AT: “the people of Judah have been taken into a foreign land” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **She** - She is the kingdom of Judah who is described as a woman. She also stands for the citizens of Judah. (See: **Personification** and **Metonymy**)
- **finds no rest** - “does not find rest.” AT: “is always afraid”
- **All her pursuers overtook her** - AT: “Everyone who was chasing her managed to capture her” or “Everyone who was hunting for her found her”
- **in her desperation** - AT: “when she was desperate” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ The roads to Mount Zion are empty

because no one comes here to celebrate the sacred festivals any longer.

No elders or leaders sit under the city gates to talk any more,

and Jerusalem's priests groan in sorrow.

The young women left in Jerusalem cry

because they are suffering greatly.

⁵ Our enemies are now masters of our city,

and they prosper.

Yahweh has punished us, the people of Jerusalem,

because of all the sins that we have committed.

Our enemies have taken all our children

and made them go to other countries.

ULB:

⁴ The roads of Zion mourn because none come to the appointed feasts.

All her gates are desolate. Her priests groan.

Her virgins are sorrowful and she herself is in complete distress.

⁵ Her adversaries have become her master; her enemies prosper.

Yahweh has afflicted her for her many sins.

Her little children go into captivity to her adversary.

translationWords:

- Zion, Mount Zion
- mourn, mourning
- feast
- gate, gate bar

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)

translationNotes:

- **The roads of Zion mourn** - The author speaks of the roads that lead to Zion mourning as if they were human beings. (See: [Personification](#))
- **the appointed feasts** - “the feasts that God told them to celebrate”
- **her gates ... Her priests** - The word “her” refers to Zion. (See: [Personification](#))
- **is in complete distress** - “is bitter” or “is despairing”
- **Her adversaries have become her master** - “Zion’s adversaries rule over her”
- **her enemies prosper** - “her enemies become rich” or “her enemies are going great”
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:6**UDB:**

⁶ Jerusalem was a beautiful city,

but it is not beautiful now.

The leaders of our city are like deer that are starving

because they can find no grass to eat.

They are very weak

and cannot run from our enemies.

ULB:

⁶ Beauty has left the daughter of Zion.

Her princes have become like deer that cannot find pasture,

and they go without strength before their pursuer.

translationWords:

- Daughter of Zion
- prince, princess

translationNotes:

- **Beauty has left the daughter of Zion** - AT: "Everything that was beautiful about the daughter of Zion is destroyed"
- **daughter of Zion** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **like deer that cannot find pasture** - The princes are compared with deer that have nothing to eat. (See: [Simile](#))
- **deer** - A deer is a medium-sized, grass-eating animal that is often hunted by humans for food. It is also a beautiful animal to look at.
- **without strength before** - AT: "but are not strong enough to run away from"
- **their pursuer** - AT: "the person that is pursuing them"

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:7**UDB:**

⁷ We, the people of Jerusalem, are sad and have no more homes to live in;
we think about all the splendid things that once filled our city.
But now our enemies have captured the city,
and there is no one to help us.
Our enemies destroyed our city
and laughed while they were doing it.

ULB:

⁷ In the days of her affliction and her homelessness, Jerusalem will call to mind
all her precious treasures that she had in former days.
When her people fell into the hand of the adversary, no one helped her.
The adversaries saw her and laughed at her destruction.

translationWords:

- afflict, affliction
- Jerusalem
- mind
- precious
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- **In the days of her affliction and her homelessness** - AT: “during her affliction and her homelessness” or “When Jerusalem is afflicted and homeless”
- **Jerusalem will call to mind** - AT: “Jerusalem will remember” (See: **Metonymy** and **Personification** and **Idiom**)
- **treasures** - “wealth”
- **in former days** - AT: “in the past” or “before this disaster happened”

- **When her people fell into the hand of the adversary** - Here the word “hand” refers to the army of the enemy. AT: “When the adversary conquered and captured her people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **no one helped her** - “there was no helper for her”
- **saw her and laughed at her destruction** - This means that they were glad and mocked Jerusalem when it was destroyed.
- **at her destruction** - AT: “because she was destroyed” or “while they destroyed her” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:8-9

UDB:

⁸ We, the people of Jerusalem, have sinned very much;

our city has become like a bloody rag between a woman's legs.

Everyone who previously honored our city now despise it;

they are like people who strip a woman bare and then mock her.

Now we groan in the city;

we are like a woman without clothes who tries to cover herself with her hands.

⁹ It is as if our city has become filthy because we have sinned so greatly;

we did not think about how God would punish us.

We did not imagine how we would suffer;

there is no one to comfort us.

We all call out to God, "Yahweh, look at how we are suffering

because our enemies have defeated us!"

ULB:

⁸ Jerusalem sinned greatly, therefore, she has become scorned as something that is filthy.

All who honored her now despise her since they have seen her nakedness.

She groans and tries to turn away.

⁹ She has become unclean beneath her skirts. She did not think about her future.

Her fall was terrible. There was no one to comfort her.

She cried out, "Look at my affliction, Yahweh, for the enemy has become too great!"

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- honor, to honor
- unclean
- comfort, comforter
- afflict, affliction
- Yahweh
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- **Jerusalem sinned greatly** - This describes Jerusalem as a person who sinned, while it also stands for the inhabitants of Jerusalem. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **scorned as something that is filthy** - According to Old Testament law, a woman was ritually unclean during her monthly bleeding. “Jerusalem’s sins have made her filthy and unclean, and therefore she was unacceptable before God.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **her nakedness** - Jerusalem is described as a woman whose private parts have been shown to everyone to shame her. AT: “her naked” (See: [Personification](#))
- **Her fall was terrible** - AT: “Her downfall was astonishing” or “those who saw her destruction were surprised” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Look at my affliction, Yahweh** - Possible meanings are that 1) the author of Lamentations now talks directly to Yahweh or 2) Jerusalem is described as talking to Yahweh like a person. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Look at** - AT: “Pay attention to” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Our enemies have taken away all our treasures,

all the valuable things that we owned.

People who do not worship you, Yahweh, are going into our sacred temple,

where you had said no foreigner must go into the place where
your people worship you.

ULB:

¹⁰ The adversary has put his hand on all our precious treasures.

She has seen the nations enter her sanctuary,

even though you had commanded that they must not enter into your assembly place.

translationWords:

- adversary, enemy
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- precious
- nation
- sanctuary
- command, to command, commandment
- assembly, assemble

translationNotes:

- **has put his hand on** - AT: “has taken possession of” or “has stolen” (See: **Idiom**)
- **treasures** - “wealth”
- **She has seen** - The word “She” refers to Jerusalem. (See: **Personification**)
- **you had commanded** - The word “you” refers to Yahweh. This means the author or the city is still speaking, after starting in **1:9**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ All the people in the city cry out with pain

while they search for food.

They have given their most valuable things

to get food to eat to restore their strength.

Yahweh, look at me,

no one values my life.

¹² You people who pass by,

you do not seem to care at all about what has happened to me.

Look around and see

that there are no other people who are suffering as I do.

Yahweh has caused me to suffer

because he was punished me on the day he was angry with us, his people.

ULB:

¹¹ All her people groan as they search for bread.

They have given their precious treasures for food to restore their lives.

Look, Yahweh, and consider me, for I have become worthless.

¹² Is it nothing to you, all you who pass by?

Look and see if there is anyone else's sorrow like the sorrow that is being inflicted on me,

since Yahweh has tormented me on the day of his fierce anger.

translationWords:

- bread
- precious
- life, live, living, alive
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- torment
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **her people** - The word “her” refers to Jerusalem who is described as if she were a woman. AT: “her inhabitants” or “the people of the city” (UDB) (See: [Personification](#))
- **treasures** - “wealth”
- **to restore their lives** - AT: “to save their lives” or “to restore their strength”
- **Look, Yahweh, and consider me** - Here Jerusalem begins to speak directly to Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Is it nothing to you, all you who pass by?** - This is an accusation of the people who walk past Jerusalem and do not care for it. It has the form of a rhetorical question to sharply rebuke them. AT: “All you who pass by should care more for my affliction!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Is it nothing to you** - Here Jerusalem continues to speak, but now to people who pass by. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Look and see if there is anyone else’s sorrow like the sorrow that is being inflicted on me** - The implication here is that there is no one else has suffered as much.
- **Look and see** - These words share similar meanings. Together they invite the reader to understand by seeing that no one has suffered so much. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the sorrow that is being inflicted on me** - AT: “the sorrow that Yahweh is inflicting upon me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **on the day of his fierce anger** - AT: “when he was fiercely angry” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ It is as though he sent a fire from heaven

that burned in my bones;

it is as though he has placed a trap to entangle my feet,

and has prevented me from walking turning back to our home.

He has abandoned me;

I am weak and alone every day, all during the day.

¹⁴ He turned the sins that I have committed into a heavy load for me to carry;

it is as though he tied them around my neck.

Previously we were strong,

but he has caused me to become weak.

He has allowed my enemies to capture me,

and I was not able to do anything to resist them.

ULB:

¹³ It is from on high that he has sent fire into my bones, and it has conquered them.

He has spread a net for my feet and turned me back.

He has made me constantly desolate and weak.

¹⁴ The yoke of my transgressions is bound together by his hand.

They are knit together and placed upon my neck. He has made my strength fail.

The Lord has given me over into their hands, and I am not able to stand.

translationWords:

- on high, in the highest
- fire
- turn, turn away, turn back

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **he has sent fire into my bones** - In this passage “he” refers to God and “my” to Jerusalem, who still speaks to other people as if it is a person. (See: [Personification](#))
- **has sent fire into my bones, and it has conquered them** - AT: “has sent a painful punishment into my inner being, and it has destroyed me” or “has sent a destructive punishment into the middle of Jerusalem, and it has destroyed the city” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **given me over into their hands** - AT: “let my enemies defeat me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:15

UDB:

¹⁵ The Lord looked at my mighty soldiers, who kept me safe.

He summoned a great army

to come and crush me to defeat my strong young soldiers.

The Lord has trampled on the people of Judah

as people trample on grapes in a pit to make juice.

ULB:

¹⁵ The Lord has tossed aside all my mighty men who defended me.

He has called an assembly against me to crush my vigorous men.

The Lord has trampled the virgin daughter of Judah in the winepress.

translationWords:

- Lord
- mighty, might
- assembly, assemble
- virgin
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- grape
- winepress

translationNotes:

- **my mighty men who defended me** - In this section Jerusalem is still described as a woman talking about herself. (See: [Personification](#))
- **mighty men** - “strongest soldiers”
- **an assembly** - Here the enemy army attacking Jerusalem is spoken of as if it were a meeting of people who have come together in order to accuse and condemn someone. AT: “an army” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **vigorous men** - men at the strongest time of their lives
- **The Lord has trampled ... in the winepress** - Here the judgment of God is described as if Jerusalem were grapes on which he had trampled in order to squeeze out the juice. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **the virgin daughter of Judah** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. The word “virgin” suggests that this woman is pure. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ I weep because of all these things.

My eyes are filled with tears.

There is no one to comfort me.

The one who comforts me is far away from me.

My children have no hope

because the enemy has taken us all captive.

¹⁷ The people who lived in Zion (the city of Jerusalem)

have no one to give them comfort.

Yahweh has give the order that the people in nearby nations

will become the enemies of the descendants of our father Jacob
(who are also called the Israelites).

Jerusalem has become disgusting to them.

ULB:

¹⁶ For these things I weep. My eyes, water flows down from my eyes
since the comforter who should restore my life is far from me.

My children are desolate because the enemy has triumphed.

¹⁷ Zion has spread her hands wide; there is none to comfort her.

Yahweh has commanded that those around Jacob should be his adversaries.

Jerusalem is something unclean to them.

translationWords:

- comfort, comforter
- restore, restoration
- life, live, living, alive
- children, child
- desolate, desolation

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **I weep** - This is still Jerusalem speaking as if it were a woman, now having the emotion of sadness. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Zion has spread her hands wide** - Zion is like a person that lifts up her hands to ask for help. Here Jerusalem no longer speaks herself, but the author describes Jerusalem. (See: [Personification](#))
- **those around Jacob** - AT: “the people around Jacob” or “the nations surrounding Jacob”
- **should be his adversaries** - Here the word “his” refers to Jacob.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ But what Yahweh has done to me is fair,
for I had refused to obey what he told me to do.
You people everywhere, listen to me!
Look and see that that I am suffering greatly.
My young daughters and brave sons
have been taken away to far off lands.

¹⁹ I pleaded with our allies, in whom we trusted, to help,
but they all refused,
they told lies and did not keep their promises.
My priests and my leaders
died with the walls of the city
while they searched for food to eat.

ULB:

¹⁸ Yahweh is righteous, for I have rebelled against his commandment.
Hear, all you peoples, and see my sorrow.
My virgins and my vigorous men have gone into captivity.
¹⁹ I called for my friends, but they were treacherous toward me.
My priests and my elders perished in the city,
while they sought food to restore their lives.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- righteous, righteousness
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- command, to command, commandment

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [elder](#)
- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)

translationNotes:

- **I have rebelled** - Here Jerusalem begins to speak again, as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **see my sorrow** - AT: “see how extremely sad I am” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **My virgins and my vigorous men** - AT: “so many of my people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **vigorous men** - See how you translated this in [1:15](#).
- **they were treacherous toward me** - AT: “they betrayed me”
- **to restore their lives** - AT: “to save their lives” or “to restore their strength”

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:20**UDB:**

²⁰ Yahweh, see that I am suffering very much!

Inside of my body I am in great distress.

I am sad in the center of my being,

because I have rebelled against you

and have caused you great sadness!

Our enemies kill people in the streets with their swords;

and that makes our homes the places where the dead are kept.

ULB:

²⁰ Look, Yahweh, for I am in distress; my stomach churns,

my heart is disturbed within me, for I have been very rebellious.

Outside, the sword bereaves a mother, inside the house there is only death.

translationWords:

- heart
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- sword
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **for I am in distress** - Jerusalem continues to talk about herself as if she were a woman, but now talks directly to Yahweh. (See: **Personification**)
- **my stomach churns** - The word “churn” means to move around violently, normally in a circular rotation. This does not mean literally, but it is how it feels. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **my heart is disturbed within me** - AT: “my heart is broken” or “I am extremely sad” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Idiom**)
- **the sword bereaves** - The sword stands for the enemy, and “takes” means “kills”. AT: “the enemy kills” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Idiom**)
- **inside the house there is only death** - Possible meanings are 1) in the house, everyone is dying or 2) the house is like a grave.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 1:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Here my groaning!

but no one came to comfort me.

All our enemies know what happened to me;

they were all happy to hear

about what Yahweh has done to his people.

Please do soon what you have promised,

when our enemies will suffer like we have suffered!

²² Yahweh, let those evils deeds come near to you

so you may see them all!

Punish them as you have punished me

for all my sins!

I suffer and groan very much,

and I faint within my inner self.

ULB:

²¹ They have heard my groaning, but there is no one to comfort me.

All my enemies have heard of my trouble and they are glad that you have done it.

You have brought the day you promised; now let them become like me.

²² Let all their wickedness come before you.

deal with them as you have dealt with me because of all my transgressions.

My groans are many and my heart is faint.

translationWords:

- **comfort, comforter**
- **adversary, enemy**
- **rejoice**
- **evil, wicked, wickedness**
- **torment**
- **transgress, transgression**
- **heart**

translationNotes:

- **They have heard my groaning** - Jerusalem continues to speak like a person. (See: [Personification](#))
- **you have done it** - Here the word “you” refers to Yahweh.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 01 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 01 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

God has become Judah's enemy. He is determined to destroy them.

Links:

- **[Lamentations 02:01 Notes](#)**

Lamentations 2:1-2**UDB:**

¹ The Lord was extremely angry with us;

it was as though he covered Jerusalem with a dark cloud.

Previously it was a beautiful city,

but he has caused it to become a ruin.

At the time he punished Israel,

he even abandoned his temple in Jerusalem.

² The Lord destroyed the homes of the people of Judah;

he did not act mercifully.

Because he was very angry,

he broke down the fortresses of Judah.

He has made our kingdom to be completely helpless, and

he has caused our rulers to lose all honor.

ULB:

² ¹ The Lord has covered the daughter of Zion under the cloud of his anger.

He has thrown the splendor of Israel down from heaven to earth.

He has not remembered his footstool on the day of his anger.

² The Lord has swallowed up and has had no compassion on all the towns of Jacob.

In the days of his anger he has thrown down the fortified cities of the daughter of Judah;

in dishonor he has brought down to the ground the kingdom and its rulers.

translationWords:

- Lord
- Zion, Mount Zion
- angry, anger

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- footstool
- compassion, compassionate
- Jacob, Israel
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- Judah
- wrath, fury
- dishonor, dishonorable
- disgrace, disgraceful
- kingdom
- prince, princess

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A new poem begins. The writer of Lamentations uses many different ways to express that the people of Israel have lost God's favor. (See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **cloud of his anger** - Possible meanings are 1) God is threatening to harm the people of Jerusalem or 2) God has already harmed the people (See: [Metaphor](#)).
- **daughter of Zion ... daughter of Judah** - These are poetic names for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **He has thrown the splendor of Israel down from heaven to earth** - "Jerusalem has lost all favor with the Lord" (See: [Metaphor](#)).
- **not remembered** - "disregarded," "paid no attention to" (See: [Metaphor](#)).
- **his footstool** - Here "footstool" represents the place where God acts kindly enough to be present. Possible referents here are 1) "his beloved city of Jerusalem" or 2) "his covenant with Israel." (See: [Metaphor](#)).
- **day of his anger** - a general period of time, not one 24-hour day AT: "at the time when he displayed his anger" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **swallowed up** - "completely destroyed" like an animal leaves nothing when he swallows food (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the fortified cities of the daughter of Judah** - Possible meanings are 1) the fortified cities throughout Judah, or 2) the fortified walls of Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:3-4

UDB:

³ Because he was extremely angry,

he has caused Israel to not be powerful anymore.

He has refused to assist us

when our enemies attacked us.

He has destroyed Israel

like a raging fire destroys everything.

⁴ He has gotten ready to kill us, his people,

as though we were his enemies.

He prepared to kill the people whom we love the most,

members of our own families.

He is extremely angry with us people of Jerusalem;

his anger is like a fire.

ULB:

³ With fierce anger he has cut off every horn of Israel.

He has withdrawn his right hand from before the enemy.

He has burned up Jacob like a blazing fire that devours everything around it.

⁴ Like an enemy he has bent his bow toward us,

with his right is ready to shoot.

He has slaughtered all who had been so pleasing to him in the tent of the daughter of Zion;

he has poured out his wrath like fire.

translationWords:

- cut off
- right hand
- adversary, enemy
- fire
- devour
- bow and arrow
- slaughter
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- precious
- tent

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer continues the use of metaphors to express God's opposition to Judah.
- **he has cut off every horn of Israel** - Here "horn" (that is, an animal horn) stands for "strength." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **withdrawn his right hand** - "stopped protecting us from our enemies" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he has bent his bow toward us** - A soldier had to bend his bow in order to shoot it. AT: "He has made his bow ready to shoot us" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **tent of the daughter of Zion** - AT: "the people's homes in Jerusalem" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **daughter of Zion** - These is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **poured out his wrath like fire** - "shown how angry he is by destroying everything like a person setting fires would" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ The Lord has become like an enemy

to us Israelites; he has destroyed us;
 he has destroyed our palaces
 and made our fortresses into ruins.
 He has gotten rid of many people in Jerusalem,
 and caused us to mourn and weep for those who were killed.

⁶ He has caused our enemies to smash his temple
 as easily as if it had been a hut in a garden.
 He has caused us, his people, to forget
 all our sacred festivals and Sabbath days.
 He has hated our kings and priests
 because he was extremely angry with them.

ULB:

⁵ The Lord has become like an enemy. He has swallowed up Israel.
 He has swallowed up all her palaces. He has destroyed her strongholds.
 He has increased mourning and lamentation within the daughter of Judah.
⁶ He has attacked his tabernacle like a garden hut. He has destroyed the
 place of the solemn assembly.
 Yahweh has caused both solemn assembly and Sabbath to be forgotten in
 Zion,
 for he has despised both king and priest in the indignation of his anger.

translationWords:

- palace
- mourn, mourning
- lament, lamentation

- [tabernacle](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [king](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

translationNotes:

- **swallowed up** - See how you translated this in [2:2](#).
- **He has increased mourning and lamentation** - AT: “He has caused more and more people to mourn and lament”
- **daughter of Judah** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **a garden hut** - a very small building for holding farming tools or for sheltering someone who is guarding a garden
- **caused both solemn assembly and Sabbath to be forgotten in Zion** - AT: “caused the people in Zion to forget both solemn assembly and Sabbath” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:7**UDB:**

⁷ Yahweh has rejected the very altar on which we had sacrificed animals to him;
 he has abandoned his temple.
 He has allowed our enemies to tear down the walls
 of our temple and our palaces.
 They shout victoriously in the temple of Yahweh,
 like we previously shouted during our sacred festivals.

ULB:

⁷ The Lord has rejected his altar and disowned his sanctuary.
 He has given over the walls of her palaces into the hand of the enemy.
 They have raised a shout in the house of Yahweh, as on the day of an appointed feast.

translationWords:

- Lord
- reject
- altar
- sanctuary
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- house of God, Yahweh's house

translationNotes:

- **He has given over ... into the hand of the enemy** - “He has turned over ... to the enemy” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the walls of her palaces** - Here the word “her” may refer either to Jerusalem or to the temple. Possible translations are 1) “the walls of Jerusalem’s palaces” or 2) “the walls of the temple.”
- **They have raised a shout in the house of Yahweh, as on the day of an appointed feast** - This is an ironic comparison between the happy, noisy festivals of Israel and the loud shouts of victory of the Babylonians. (See: [Irony](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh was determined

that our enemies would tear down our city wall.

It was as though he had first measured the walls

and then completely destroyed them.

It was as though he caused the towers and walls to lament

because they were now ruins.

⁹ The city gates have collapsed;

the enemy has destroyed the bars that fastened the gates shut.

The king and his officials have been forced to go to other countries,

where no one teaches the laws that God gave to Moses.

The prophets do not receive any visions

because Yahweh does not give them any.

ULB:

⁸ Yahweh decided to destroy the city wall of the daughter of Zion.

He has stretched out the measuring line and has not withheld his hand from destroying the wall.

He has made the ramparts and wall to lament; together they wasted away.

⁹ Her gates have sunk into the ground; he has destroyed and broken the bars of her gate.

Her king and her princes are among the nations, the law is no more and her prophets find no vision from Yahweh.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Zion, Mount Zion
- hand, right hand, to hand over

- [lament, lamentation](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [king](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [Gentile](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [vision](#)

translationNotes:

- **daughter of Zion** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **He has stretched out the measuring line** - AT: "He has measured the length of the wall" so he knows exactly how much to destroy (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **has not withheld his hand from destroying** - AT: "He has destroyed using all his power" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Double Negatives](#))
- **withheld his hand** - "kept his hand to himself"
- **He has made the ramparts and wall to lament; together they wasted away** - "Because he has destroyed the ramparts and walls, they look like people who lament and have lost their strength" (See: [Personification](#))
- **ramparts** - Ancient cities had a main "wall" to keep attackers out, and an outer line of "ramparts" to keep attackers from the wall.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:10

UDB:

¹⁰ The old men of Jerusalem sit on the ground,
and they say nothing.
They are so sad that they wear rough sackcloth
and throw dust on their heads.
The young girls of Jerusalem bow down sorrowfully,
their faces touch the ground.

ULB:

¹⁰ The elders of the daughter of Zion sit on the ground in silence.
They have thrown dust on their heads and put on sackcloth.
The virgins of Jerusalem bowed their heads to the ground.

translationWords:

- [elder](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **daughter of Zion** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **sit on the ground** - to show they were mourning (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ My eyes are very tired because of my tears;

I am very grieved within my inner being.

Because very many of my people have died,

in my inner being I grieve and am exhausted.

Even children and babies are fainting

and dying in the streets because they have no food.

¹² They cry out to their mothers,

“We need something to eat and drink!”

They collapse like wounded men

in the streets of the city.

They slowly die

in the arms of their mothers.

ULB:

¹¹ My eyes have failed from their tears; my stomach churns;

my inner parts are poured out to the ground because of the destruction of
the daughter of my people,

children and infants faint in the streets of the city.

¹² They say to their mothers, “Where is grain and wine?”

as they faint like a wounded man in the streets of the city,

their lives are poured out on the bosom of their mothers.

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- grain
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer shifts from describing Jerusalem to describing his own experience.
- **My eyes have failed from their tears** - AT: "I have cried until I cannot cry anymore" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **my inner parts are poured out to the ground** - AT: "my entire inner being is in grief" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **because of the destruction of the daughter of my people** - "the daughter of my people" is a poetic name of Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. AT: "because my people have been crushed" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))
- **Where is grain and wine?** - The phrase "grain and wine" is a common way of saying "food and drink." AT: "Give us something to eat and drink." (See: [Idiom](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ You people of Jerusalem,

I cannot say anything to help you.

No people have suffered like you are suffering;

I do not know what I can do to comfort you.

You have fallen just as far

as if you had sunk in the ocean;

there is no one who can bring your city back to what it was.

¹⁴ The prophets among you claimed that they had seen visions from Yahweh,
but what they said was false and worthless.

They did not work to save you from your enemies;

they did not tell you that you had sinned.

Instead, they announced to you things that they said Yahweh had told them;

they tempted you to believe them, and you did.

ULB:

¹³ What can I say to you, daughter of Jerusalem?

To what can I compare to you, that I may comfort you, virgin daughter of Zion?

Your wound is as great as the sea. Who can heal you?

¹⁴ Your prophets have seen false and worthless visions for you.

They have not exposed your iniquity to restore your fortunes,

but for you they have seen oracles that are false and misleading.

translationWords:

- **comfort, comforter**
- **virgin**

- Zion, Mount Zion
- heal, cure
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- fool, foolish, folly
- vision
- reveal, revelation
- iniquity
- restore, restoration
- tempt, temptation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer begins to address Jerusalem.
- **What can I say ... Jerusalem?** - “There is nothing that I can say ... Jerusalem.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **daughter of Jerusalem** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **To what can I compare to you ... Zion?** - “There is nothing to which I can compare you ... Zion.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Who can heal you?** - “No one can heal you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ All those who pass by you

make fun of you by clapping their hands;

they shake their heads and hiss at you;

They say, "Is this the great city of Jerusalem?

Is it the city that people said was the most beautiful city in the world,

the city that caused all the people on the earth to rejoice?"

¹⁶ Now all our enemies laugh at you;

they hate you so much that they hiss at you and grind their teeth at you.

They say, "We have destroyed Israel!

This is what we longed for,

and now it has happened!"

ULB:

¹⁵ All those who pass along the road clap their hands at you.

They hiss and shake their heads against the daughter of Jerusalem and say,

"Is this the city that they called 'The Perfection of Beauty,' 'The Joy for All of Earth'?"

¹⁶ All your enemies open their mouths and mocked you.

They sneer and grind their teeth and say, "We have swallowed her up!

This is the day we have waited for! We have lived to see it!"

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- perfect
- joy, joyful
- adversary, enemy
- mock, ridicule, scoff at

translationNotes:

- **clap their hands ... hiss and shake their heads** - ways in which people make fun of others and insult them (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the daughter of Jerusalem** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Is this the city that they called 'The Perfection of Beauty,' 'The Joy for All of Earth'?** - This question is used to express sarcasm." This city that they called 'The Perfection of Beauty,' 'The Joy for All of Earth' is not so beautiful or joyful any more!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **We have swallowed her** - "We have completely destroyed Jerusalem" like an animal swallows its food (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:17**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh has done what he planned;

long ago he threatened to destroy you,
and now he has done it.

He has destroyed your city without acting mercifully toward you;
he has enabled your enemies to be happy about defeating you;
he has enabled your enemies to continually become stronger.

ULB:

¹⁷ Yahweh has done what he planned to do. He has fulfilled his word.

He has overthrown you without pity,
for he has permitted the enemy to rejoice over you; he has lifted up the horn
of your enemies.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- fulfill
- word
- proclaim, proclamation
- compassion, compassionate
- rejoice
- strength, strengthen
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- **he has lifted up the horn of your enemies** - Here “horn” (that is, an animal horn) often stands for strength. AT: “he has increased the power of your enemies” (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ I wish the city walls could speak like the people who

cry out to Yahweh!

I would tell the walls, "Cry out for help to Yahweh!

Let your tears flow day and night!

Let them flow like rivers.

Do not stop grieving;

do not stop crying."

¹⁹ Get up during every night and cry out;

tell Yahweh what you feel in your inner beings.

Raise your arms to plead to him

to act mercifully to prevent our children from dying;

they are fainting on the street corners

because they have no food to eat.

ULB:

¹⁸ Their heart cried out to the Lord,

walls of the daughter of Zion! Make your tears flow down like a river day and night.

Give yourself no relief, your eyes no relief.

¹⁹ Arise, cry out in the night, at the beginning of the night watches!

Pour out your heart like water before the face of the Lord.

Lift up your hands to him for the lives of your children who faint with hunger at the corner of every street."

translationWords:

- heart
- Lord
- Zion, Mount Zion
- watch, watchman
- face
- life, live, living, alive
- children, child
- head

translationNotes:

- **Their heart cried out** - Possible meanings are 1) “The people of Jerusalem shout from their innermost being” or 2) the speaker wants the walls to shout to Yahweh. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **walls of the daughter of Zion ... of every street** - The writer speaks to the walls of Jerusalem. He wants the people of Jerusalem to do what he is telling the walls to do. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **the daughter of Zion** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Make your tears flow down like a river** - “Cry many tears” (See: [Personification](#))
- **day and night** - “all of the time” (See: [Merism](#))
- **Give yourself no relief** - “Do not allow yourself to rest”
- **at the beginning of the night watches** - “many times during the night” that is, every time a watchman comes on duty
- **Lift up your hands** - This was an action often performed while praying.
- **at the corner of every street** - “where the streets come together” or “by the roads”

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:20

UDB:

²⁰ Yahweh, look at your people and have mercy on us.

Have you ever caused people to suffer like this before?

It is certainly not right that women are eating the flesh of their own children,
the children whom they have always taken care of.

It is not right that our enemies are killing priests and prophets
in your own temple!

ULB:

²⁰ See, Yahweh, and consider those you have dealt in this way.

Should women eat the fruit of their wombs, the children whom they have
cared for?

Should priest and prophet be slaughtered in the sanctuary of the Lord?

translationWords:

- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **Should women eat the fruit of their wombs ... for?** - AT: "Woman should not eat their own children ... for!" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the fruit of their wombs** - "children who are still young" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 2:21-22

UDB:

²¹ The corpses of people of all ages lie in the streets;

there are even corpses of young men and young women whom our enemies have killed with their swords.

Because you were very angry,

you caused them to be killed;

you have slaughtered them

without pitying them at all.

²² You summoned my enemies to attack from every direction,

as though you were calling them to come to a feast.

At that time you showed that you were very angry,

and no one escaped.

Our enemies murdered our little children,

the ones whom we took care of and reared up.

ULB:

²¹ Both the young and the old lie on the dust of the streets.

My young women and my young men have fallen by the sword;

you have slaughtered them without taking pity on them.

²² You have summoned, as you would call the people to a feast day, my terrors on every side, on the day of the anger of Yahweh no one escaped or survived;

those I cared for and raised,

my enemy has destroyed.

translationWords:

- virgin
- sword
- slaughter
- wrath, fury

- compassion, compassionate
- terror, terrify
- assembly, assemble
- Yahweh
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- **the young and the old** - the weakest and strongest of adults (See: [Merism](#))
- **my terrors** - “the attackers I was afraid of” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **as you would call the people to a feast day** - “as if they were coming to a feast” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 02 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 02 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Troubles

Everything has gone wrong and the author is miserable. The text has a sad or depressing tone.

Links:

- [Lamentations 03:01 Notes](#)

Lamentations 3:1-4**UDB:**

¹ I, the one who am writing this, am a man whom Yahweh made to suffer,
because he was angry.

² It was as though he caused me to walk in a very dark place
without any light at all.

³ He has punished me many times,
many times during each day.

⁴ He has caused my skin and my flesh to become old.
He has broken my bones.

ULB:

³ ¹ I am a man who has seen misery under the rod of Yahweh's fury.

² He drove me away and caused me to walk in darkness rather than light.

³ Surely he turned his hand against me again and again, the whole day long.

⁴ He made my flesh and my skin waste away; he broke my bones.

translationWords:

- rod
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- walk
- darkness
- light
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- flesh

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - A new poem begins (See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **under the rod of Yahweh's fury** - The rod is a stick that people used to beat and punish someone. AT: "Because Yahweh is angrily beating me." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

- **walk in darkness rather than light** - This means to live in confusion and gloom. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he turned his hand against me** - AT: “he has become my enemy” or “he uses his power to punish me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:5-8**UDB:**

⁵ He has surrounded me with things

that make me suffer very bitterly.

⁶ It is as though he has buried me in a dark place

like those who have been dead for a long time.

⁷ It is as though he has built a prison wall around me,

and fastened me with heavy chains, so I cannot escape.

⁸ Although I call out and cry out for him to help me,

he does not pay attention to me.

ULB:

⁵ He built up siege works against me, and surrounded me with bitterness and hardship.

⁶ He made me live in dark places, like those who died long ago.

⁷ He built a wall around me and I cannot escape. He made my chains heavy

⁸ and though I call out and cry for help, he shut out my prayer.

translationWords:

- **siege, besiege**
- **darkness**
- **death, die, dead**
- **pray, prayer**

translationNotes:

- **He built up siege works against me** - Siege works are ramps of dirt that enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city. AT: “He surrounded me as if I were a city under attack.” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **surrounded me with bitterness and hardship** - AT: “surrounded me with things that are painful and hard to bear” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **he shut out my prayer** - AT: “he refuses to hear my prayer” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:9-11

UDB:

⁹ It is as though he has blocked my path with a high stone wall
and has caused me to wander everywhere to try to get out.

¹⁰ He has waited to attack me
like a bear or a lion hides and waits to attack a man.

¹¹ It is as though a bear has dragged me off the path and mauled me,
and left me alone without help.

ULB:

⁹ He blocked my path with a wall of hewn stone; he made my paths crooked.

¹⁰ He is like a bear waiting to ambush me, a lion in hiding;

¹¹ he turned aside my paths, he has made be desolate.

translationWords:

- [lion](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)

translationNotes:

- **blocked my path** - “prevented me from escaping from him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **hewn stone** - stones that someone has cut into regular shapes that fit together and make the wall strong
- **stone; he made my paths crooked** - Possible meanings are 1) “stone, and so I cannot go anywhere” or 2) “stone; every road I take leads nowhere”
- **he turned aside my paths** - Possible meanings are 1) “he dragged me off the path” or 2) “he caused my path to turn in the wrong direction”

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:12-15**UDB:**

¹² It is as though he strung his bow and made me the target
to shoot at with his arrows.

¹³ It is as though he shot his arrows
deep into my body.

¹⁴ All my relatives laugh at me;
all during each day they sing songs that make fun of me.

¹⁵ Yahweh has made me suffer greatly,
like someone suffers after drinking something very bitter.

ULB:

¹² He bent his bow and set me as a target for his arrow.

¹³ He pierced my kidneys with the arrows of his quiver.

¹⁴ I became a laughingstock to all my people, the object of their taunting all day long.

¹⁵ He filled me with bitterness and forced me to drink wormwood.

translationWords:

- bow and arrow
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **He bent his bow** - See how you translated this in 2:4.
- **quiver** - bag worn on the back in which to store arrows
- **kidneys** - abdominal organs that feed urine into the bladder. AT: “deep into my body” (UDB) or 2) “into my heart.” (See: **Idiom**)
- **a laughingstock to all my people** - Possible meanings are 1) “someone at whom all Israel laughs” or 2) “someone at whom all people on earth laugh.” (See: **Hyperbole**)

- **He filled me with bitterness** - “It is as though he forced me to eat bitter herbs” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **wormwood** - bitter juice from the leaves and flowers of a plant

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ It is as though he has caused me to chew gravel that broke my teeth;

it is as though he has trampled me in the ground.

¹⁷ Things no longer go well for me;

I no longer remember being prosperous.

¹⁸ I continued to say to myself, "I not strong enough to bear any more hardships.

I no longer expect to that Yahweh will rescue me."

ULB:

¹⁶ He crushed my teeth with gravel; he has pushed me down into the dust.

¹⁷ My soul is deprived of peace; I have forgotten what happiness is.

¹⁸ So I say, "My endurance has perished and so has my hope in Yahweh."

translationWords:

- peace, peaceful
- life, live, living, alive
- endure, endurance
- perish, perishing, perishable
- hope
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **He crushed ... he has pushed me** - are two expressions for God humbling the author. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **My soul is deprived of peace** - The author is no longer experiencing joy or pleasure in his life.
- **My endurance has perished** - Some versions translate, "My glory has perished," but here "glory" stands for endurance or strength. (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ When I think about how I suffer and how I wander far from home,

it is like drinking a very bitter liquid.

²⁰ I will never forget this time

when I feel very depressed.

²¹ However, I confidently expect Yahweh to do good things for me again,

and this I know is true.

ULB:

¹⁹ Remember my affliction and my wanderings, the wormwood and bitterness.

²⁰ I continually remember it and I am bowed down within me.

²¹ But I call this to mind and therefore I have hope:

translationWords:

- [mind](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)
- [astray, go astray, led astray, stray](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **wormwood and bitterness** - Wormwood is a plant that gives a liquid which is very bitter to drink. “Wormwood” and “bitterness” have similar meanings and emphasize that this is something that is very bitter. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **I am bowed down within me** - This expression refers to depression and despair. AT: “my soul melts within me” or “I am in despair” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **But I call this to mind** - The author is about to tell the audience what he has hope in.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:22-24

UDB:

²² Yahweh never stops faithfully loving us, and because of his love, we are not destroyed.

He never stops acting kindly toward us.

²³ Every morning he acts mercifully toward us again.

He is the one in whom we can always trust.

²⁴ So I sincerely say to myself, "Yahweh gives me what I need!"

Because I believe this, I will confidently wait for him to do good things for me.

ULB:

²² The steadfast love of Yahweh never ceases and his compassions never end,

²³ they are new every morning; your faithfulness is great.

²⁴ "Yahweh is my inheritance," I said, therefore I will hope in him.

translationWords:

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- mercy, merciful
- faithful, faithfulness
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

translationNotes:

- **your faithfulness** - The writer speaks to Yahweh.
- **Yahweh is my inheritance** - "Because Yahweh is with me, I have everything I need"

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:25-29**UDB:**

²⁵ Yahweh is good to all those who depend on him,

to those who seek him to help them.

²⁶ So it is good for us to wait quietly

for Yahweh to save us.

²⁷ And it is good for us to suffer patiently

while we are young.

²⁸ Those who seek him to help them should sit by themselves and not complain,

because they know that it is Yahweh who has allowed them to suffer.

²⁹ They should lie in the dirt, with their faces on the ground,

because they can still hope that Yahweh will help them.

ULB:

²⁵ Yahweh is good to those who wait for him, to the one who seeks him.

²⁶ It is good to wait silently for the salvation of Yahweh.

²⁷ It is good for a man that he bear the yoke in his youth.

²⁸ Let him sit alone in silence, when it is laid upon him.

²⁹ Let him put his mouth in the dust—there may yet be hope.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- good, goodness
- life, live, living, alive
- salvation
- to bear
- yoke
- hope

translationNotes:

- **those who wait for him** - Possible meanings are 1) “all those who depend on him” (UDB) or 2) “the one who waits patiently for him to act.”
- **the one who seeks him** - AT: “the person who seeks him” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **bear the yoke** - “suffer” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **it is laid upon him** - “the yoke is laid upon him”
- **put his mouth in the dust** - AT: “bown down with his mouth on the ground” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:30-33**UDB:**

³⁰ If someone strikes us on one cheek,

we should turn the other cheek toward that person in order that he
may strike it, too,

and accept it when others insult us.

³¹ Yahweh does not abandon us, his people, forever.

³² Sometimes he causes us to suffer,

but he also acts kindly toward us

because he continually and faithfully loves us.

³³ And he does not take pleasure when he causes people to suffer

or be sad.

ULB:

³⁰ Let him give his cheek to the one who strikes him, and let him be filled
full with disgrace.

³¹ For the Lord will not reject us forever,

³² but though he causes grief, he will have compassion according to the abun-
dance of his steadfast love.

³³ For he does not afflict from his heart or torment the children of mankind.

translationWords:

- disgrace, disgraceful
- Lord
- reject
- forever
- compassion, compassionate
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- heart
- torment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer speaks of the one who waits for Yahweh (3:25).
- **Let him give his cheek to the one who strikes him** - “Let him allow people to strike him” or (See: [Idiom](#))
- **though he causes** - “though Yahweh causes”
- **children of mankind** - AT: “human beings” or “people” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:34-36**UDB:**

³⁴ If people mistreat and oppress all the prisoners,
 ³⁵ or if they rebel against God
 by refusing to do for others what is right,
 ³⁶ or if they cause judges to decide matters unjustly,
 Yahweh certainly sees all these things.

ULB:

³⁴ To crush underfoot all the prisoners of the earth,
³⁵ to deny a man justice in the presence of the Most High,
³⁶ to deny justice to a person—the Lord would not approve such things!

translationWords:

- [captive, captivity](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [face](#)
- [Most High](#)
- [Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **To crush underfoot** - “To abuse” or “To kill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:37-39

UDB:

³⁷ No one can make something happen

unless Yahweh has already decided that it should happen.

³⁸ God in heaven is the one who commands that disasters should happen,
and he also causes good things to happen.

³⁹ So it is certainly not right for us, who are only people on earth, to complain
when he punishes us for the sins that we have committed.

ULB:

³⁷ Who has spoken and it came to pass, unless the Lord decreed it?

³⁸ Is it not from the mouth of the Most High that both calamities and the good
come?

³⁹ How can any person alive complain? How can a person complain about
the punishment for his sins?

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

translationNotes:

- **Is it not from the mouth of the Most High that both calamities and the good come? - AT:**
“God decrees disaster or success for every person” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:40-43**UDB:**

⁴⁰ Instead, we should think carefully about how we behave;

we should turn back to Yahweh.

⁴¹ We should pray with all our inner beings and lift up our arms
toward God in heaven, and say,

⁴² "We have sinned and rebelled against you,
and you have not forgiven us.

⁴³ You have been very angry and chased after us;
you have slaughtered us without pitying us.

ULB:

⁴⁰ Let us examine our ways and test them, and let us return to Yahweh.

⁴¹ Let us lift up our hearts and our hands to God in the heavens:

⁴² "We have transgressed and rebelled, and you have not forgiven.

⁴³ You have covered yourself with anger and pursued us, you have killed
and you have not spared.

translationWords:

- test
- Yahweh
- heart
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- pray, prayer
- transgress, transgression
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- pardon
- angry, anger
- slaughter

translationNotes:

- **Let us lift up our hearts and our hands** - It was customary for the Israelites to raise their hands when praying to God. AT: "Let us pray sincerely with lifted hands" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

- **We have transgressed and rebelled** - The words “transgressed” and “rebelled” share similar meanings. Together they indicate that transgression is the same as rebelling against Yahweh. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **You have covered yourself with anger** - Here anger is spoken of as if it were a garment that God has put on. Hebrew often spoke of emotions as if they were clothing. AT: “You have been angry.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:44-47**UDB:**

- ⁴⁴ You have hidden yourself away, as if you were in a cloud,
 so that you will not hear us when we pray.
- ⁴⁵ You have made us go among the foreign peoples,
 and they think we are only garbage.
- ⁴⁶ All our enemies have spoken things to insult us.
- ⁴⁷ We are constantly afraid that people will trap us,
 because we have experienced so many disasters and so much ruin.”

ULB:

- ⁴⁴ You have covered yourself with a cloud so that no prayer can pass through.
- ⁴⁵ You have made us like filthy scum and refuse among the nations.
- ⁴⁶ All our enemies curse us,
- ⁴⁷ panic and pitfall have come upon us, ruin and destruction.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- adversary, enemy
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- pit
- desolate, desolation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The prayer that began in 3:42 continues.
- **You have covered yourself with a cloud so that no prayer can pass through** - AT: “You use the clouds as a shield to keep our prayers away” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **You have made us like filthy scum and refuse** - The words “filthy scum” and “refuse” both refer to things that people have rejected and thrown away. AT: “You have thrown us away as if we were just trash.” (See: **Doublet** and **Metaphor**)

- **among the nations** - Possible meanings are 1) that other nations view them as garbage (UDB), or 2) that Yahweh has discarded them as garbage among the nations.
- **ruin and destruction** - These two words share similar meanings and refer to destruction of Jerusalem. AT: “total destruction.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:48-50**UDB:**

⁴⁸ Many tears flow from my eyes

because my people have been destroyed.

⁴⁹ My tears continually flow;

they will not stop

⁵⁰ until Yahweh looks down from heaven and sees us.

ULB:

⁴⁸ My eyes flow with streams of tears because my people are destroyed.

⁴⁹ My eyes will shed tears without ceasing; without relief,

⁵⁰ until he will look down and Yahweh will see from heaven.

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **My eyes flow with streams of tears** - “Tears flow from my eyes like water flows in a river” because I am crying (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **because my people are destroyed** - See how you translated this in [2:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:51-54**UDB:**

⁵¹ I am very grieved

because of what has happened to the women of my city.

⁵² My enemies hunted for me

like people hunt for a bird to kill it

even though there was no reason for them to do that.

⁵³ They threw me into a pit to kill me,

and placed a heavy stone over the top of it.

⁵⁴ The water in the pit rose above my head,

and I said to myself, "I am about to die!"

ULB:

⁵¹ My eyes cause me grief because of all the daughters of my city.

⁵² I have been hunted like a bird those who were my enemies; they hunted me without a reason.

⁵³ They cast me into a pit and they threw a stone on me,

⁵⁴ and waters poured over my head. I said, "I have been cut off!"

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- adversary, enemy
- well, cistern
- cut off

translationNotes:

- **My eyes cause me grief** - AT: "What I see causes me much pain" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **all the daughters of my city** - Possible meanings are 1) the women of Jerusalem or 2) all the inhabitants of Jerusalem. (See: **Idiom**)

- **They cast me into a pit** - AT: "They have killed me by drowning me in a well." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **threw a stone on me** - Possible meanings are 1) "have thrown stones at me" or 2) "have covered the well with a stone."
- **I have been cut off** - AT: "I have been killed" or "I am drowning" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:55-57**UDB:**

⁵⁵ But from the bottom of the pit I cried out to you,

“Yahweh, help me!”

⁵⁶ I pleaded with you,

“Do not refuse to hear me when I cry out to you!”

⁵⁷ Then you answered me

and said, “Do not be afraid!”

ULB:

⁵⁵ I called on your name, Yahweh, from the depths of the pit.

⁵⁶ You heard my voice when I said, “Do not close your ear to my cry for help.”

⁵⁷ You came near on the day I called on you; you said, “Do not fear.”

translationWords:

- call, calling, called, call out
- name
- Yahweh
- pit
- voice
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **I called on your name** - AT: “I called to you for help” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **from the depths of the pit** - Possible meanings are 1) “from a very deep well” or 2) “from the grave.”
- **You heard my voice** - AT: “You heard what I said” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **Do not close your ear** - AT: “Do not refuse to listen” (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:58-61**UDB:**

⁵⁸ Yahweh, you argued for me when people wanted to condemn me and execute me;

you did not allow me to die.

⁵⁹ Now, Yahweh, you have seen the evil things that my enemies have done to me,

so judge my case and show that I have done nothing wrong.

⁶⁰ You know the evil things

that they are planning to do to me.

⁶¹ Yahweh, you have heard them insult me;

you have heard what they plan to do to me.

ULB:

⁵⁸ Lord, you defended my case, you saved my life!

⁵⁹ Yahweh, you have seen the wrong they have done to me; judge my case.

⁶⁰ You have seen their insults, all their plots against me—

⁶¹ You have heard their scorn, Yahweh, and all their plans regarding me.

translationWords:

- Lord
- trial
- save, safe
- Yahweh
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- judge, judgment
- just, justice, justly
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

- **you defended my case, you saved my life!** - This presents a picture of a courtroom, where the speaker is on trial. In this picture, God argues for him, as a lawyer argues for his client. AT: “you argued for me in court” (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)
- **judge my case** - Here God is no longer pictured as a lawyer, but as the judge. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **their insults, all their plots against me** - These two phrases share similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **heard their scorn** - AT: “heard them taunt me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:62-63**UDB:**

⁶² Every day they whisper and mutter things about me,
all during the day.

⁶³ Look at them! Whatever they are doing at the moment,
they make fun of me by the songs that they sing.

ULB:

⁶² The lips of those who rise up against me, and their accusations, come
against all the day.

⁶³ Look at how they sit and then rise up; they mock me with their songs.

translationWords:

- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)

translationNotes:

- **The lips of those who rise up against me** - AT: "The words that those who rise up against me spoke" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **those who rise up against me** - AT: "those who attack me" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **how they sit and then rise up** - AT: "everything they do" (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 3:64-66**UDB:**

⁶⁴ Yahweh, give them what they deserve!

Pay them back for what they have done to me!

⁶⁵ Curse them

and make them very, very afraid of you.

⁶⁶ Because you are angry with them, pursue them and get rid of them,
until none of them remain on the earth.

ULB:

⁶⁴ Pay back to them, Yahweh, according to what they have done.

⁶⁵ You will let their hearts be shameless! May your condemnation be upon them!

⁶⁶ You pursue them in anger and destroy them from under the heavens, Yahweh!

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [heart](#)
- [curse, cursed](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **Pay back to them, Yahweh, according to what they have done** - AT: "They have made me suffer, Yahweh, so please make them suffer now"
- **let their hearts be shameless** - AT: "cause them to feel no shame" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **from under the heavens** - AT: "wherever they are on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 03 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 03 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Judah being destroyed continues in this chapter. The famine destroyed the rulers and the priests. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Links:

- [Lamentations 04:01 Notes](#)

Lamentations 4:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Previously our people were like pure gold,
but now they are worthless.

Just as our enemies have scattered the sacred stones in the temple,
so they have also scattered our young men.

² The young men of Jerusalem were as valuable as large amounts of gold,
but now people consider them to be as worthless as ordinary clay
pots.

ULB:

4 ¹ The gold has become tarnished; how the purest gold has changed!
The holy stones are scattered at the corner of every street.

² The precious sons of Zion were worth their weight in pure gold,
but now they are worth no more than clay jars, the work of the potter's
hands!

translationWords:

- gold
- holy, holiness
- head
- Zion, Mount Zion
- precious

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A new poem begins. See [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#).
- **holy stones** - the stones that made up the temple
- **at the corner of every street** - See how you translated this in [2:19](#) (See: [Idiom](#))
- **sons of Zion** - Possible meanings are 1) The young men of Jerusalem or 2) all the people of Jerusalem.

- **they are worth no more than clay jars, the work of the potter's hands!** - AT: "people consider them to be as worthless as the clay jars that potters make!" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:3

UDB:

³ Even the female jackals feed their pups,

but my people act cruelly toward their own children;
the mothers are like ostriches in the desert that abandon their eggs.

ULB:

³ Even the jackals offer the breast to nurse their cubs, but
the daughter of my people has become cruel, like the ostriches in the desert.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

- **the jackals offer the breast to nurse their cubs** - This means that mother jackals freely allow their babies to nurse.
- **jackals** - fierce wild dogs, the worst of unclean animals
- **the daughter of my people** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. See how you translated this in [2:11](#). (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:4-5

UDB:

⁴ My people's infants' tongues cling to the roofs of their mouths

because they are extremely thirsty;
the children plead for some food,
but no one gives them any.

⁵ People who previously ate fine food
are now starving in the streets;
those who previously wore fine clothes
now lie upon the rubbish heaps with nothing to eat.

ULB:

⁴ The tongue of the nursing baby sticks to the roof of his mouth by thirst;
the children ask for food, but there is none for them.

⁵ The ones who used to feast on expensive food now starve in the streets;
those who were brought up wearing purple clothing, now lie upon piles of
garbage.

translationWords:

- [bread](#)

translationNotes:

- **those who were brought up wearing purple clothing** - Wearing scarlet clothes was a sign that a person was wealthy.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:6

UDB:

⁶ The people of Sodom died very suddenly in a disaster,
and there was no one to rescue them;
but God has punished my people
more severely than the people of Sodom.

ULB:

⁶ The punishment of the daughter of my people is greater than that of Sodom,
and it was overthrown in a moment
and no one lifted a hand to help her.

translationWords:

- [iniquity](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [seize](#)

translationNotes:

- **punishment** - Possible meanings are 1) “punishment for the sin” or 2) “sin.”
- **the daughter of my people** - This is a poetic name for Jerusalem, which is spoken of here as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **it was overthrown in a moment** - “God destroyed it in a moment” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **no one lifted a hand to help her** - “though no one helped her” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Our leaders were could be compare to snow or milk,

so they were clean and spotless.

Their physical bodies were healthy,

and their health and strength could compare

to brilliance and beauty of sapphires.

⁸ But now their faces are blacker than soot,

and no one recognizes them in the streets.

Their skin has shriveled on their bones,

and it has become as dry as a wooden stick.

ULB:

⁷ Her leaders were purer than snow, whiter than milk;

their bodies were more ruddy than coral, their form was like sapphire.

⁸ Their appearance now is darker than soot;

they are not recognized in the streets.

Their skin has shriveled on their bones;

it has become as dry as wood.

translationWords:

- snow

translationNotes:

- **Her leaders were purer than snow, whiter than milk** - Possible meanings; 1) “Our leaders were previously beautiful to look at” (UDB) because they were physically healthy or 2) the people loved their leaders because the leaders were morally pure the way new snow and milk are pure white. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **Her leaders** - Jerusalem's leaders
- **ruddy** - healthy looking
- **coral** - a rock-hard red substance that comes from the ocean used like jewelry
- **sapphire** - a costly blue stone used in jewelry
- **Their appearance now is darker than soot** - This may mean 1) that the sun has darkened the leaders' skin or 2) that the soot from the fires that burned Jerusalem has covered their faces.
- **they are not recognized** - AT: "No one can recognize them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **has become as dry as wood** - because they do not have enough food and water (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ It is better to die in a battle

than to die of hunger.

There was no food to harvest in the fields,

so the people slowly starved until they died.

¹⁰ Women who usually acted with love and compassion

have killed and cooked their own children;

they ate them when there was no other food,

when Jerusalem was being destroyed by attacking armies.

ULB:

⁹ Those who have been killed by the sword were happier than those killed by hunger,

who wasted away, pierced by the lack of any harvest from the field.

¹⁰ The hands of compassionate women have boiled their own children;

they became their food during the time

when the daughter of my people was being destroyed.

translationWords:

- sword
- compassion, compassionate
- children, child

translationNotes:

- **Those who have been killed by the sword** - AT: "Those whom enemy soldiers have killed" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **those killed by hunger** - AT: "those who starve to death" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **wasted away** - AT: “those who became thin and weak because they were dying from hunger” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **pierced by the lack of any harvest from the field** - Lack of food is spoken of here as if it were a sword. AT: “whom hunger has killed” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **The hands of compassionate women** - AT: “Compassionate women” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:11

UDB:

¹¹ Yahweh has shown to everyone how angry he was with his people!

His anger spread like a fire in Zion (the city of Jerusalem)
that burned the city down to its rock foundations.

ULB:

¹¹ Yahweh showed all his wrath; he poured out his fierce anger.
He kindled a fire in Zion that consumed her foundations.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [rage](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [fire](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [devour](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh showed all his wrath; he poured out his fierce anger** - Yahweh was very angry, and he has done everything he wanted to do to show that he was angry. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **he poured out his fierce anger** - God's anger is like a hot, burning liquid that he pours out. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **He kindled a fire in Zion** - This may mean either 1) that God's anger is like a fire that destroyed Jerusalem, or 2) that God caused enemies to burn Jerusalem with fire. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:12-13**UDB:**

¹² None of the kings on the earth or anyone else

believed that any of our enemies could enter the gates of Jerusalem.

¹³ But that is what happened;

it happened because the prophets sinned;

the priests also sinned

by causing innocent people to die.

ULB:

¹² The kings of the earth did not believe,

nor did any of the inhabitants of the world believe,

that enemies or opponents could enter the gates of Jerusalem.

¹³ This happened because of the sins of her prophets and the iniquities of her priests

who have shed the blood of the righteous in her midst.

translationWords:

- king
- earth, earthly
- believe, believe in, belief
- adversary, enemy
- gate, gate bar
- Jerusalem
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- iniquity
- priest, priesthood
- blood
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **The kings of the earth did not believe, nor did any of the inhabitants of the world believe** - “Nobody anywhere believed” (See: [Merism](#))
- **enemies or opponents** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that these are people who desired to harm Jerusalem. AT: “any kind of enemy” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the sins of her prophets and the iniquities of her priests** - These two lines share similar meanings and emphasize that these spiritual leaders were largely responsible for the fall of Jerusalem. AT: “the terrible sins of her prophets and priests” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **who have shed the blood of the righteous** - Both the priests and the prophets were guilty of murder. AT: “who have murdered the righteous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ The prophets and priests wander through the streets

as though they were blind.

No one will touch them

because their clothes are stained with the blood of those innocent people.

¹⁵ These prophets and priests shout, "Stay away from us!

Do not touch us!"

So the prophets and priests have fled from Israel,

and they wander around from one country to another,

but people in each country keep saying to them, "You cannot stay here!"

ULB:

¹⁴ They wandered, blind, through the streets.

They were so defiled by that blood that no one was allowed to touch their clothes.

¹⁵ "Away! Unclean!" people cried at them. "Away! Away! Do not touch!"

So they wandered about; people said among the nations, "They can stay here no longer."

translationWords:

- defile, be defiled
- blood
- unclean
- Gentile
- foreigner, foreign, alien

translationNotes:

- **They were so defiled by that blood** - Because they have committed murder, they are ritually unclean, unable to worship God or be with ordinary people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ It is Yahweh himself who has scattered them;

he no longer is concerned about them.

People do not welcome our priests any longer, and they care nothing for the elders.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh himself scattered them; he does not watch over them anymore.

They do not honor the priests,

and they did not show any favor to the elders.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [receive](#)
- [elder](#)

translationNotes:

- **scattered them** - scattered the prophets and priests
- **not watch over them anymore** - “not continue to accept them any longer” or “no longer continue to approve of them” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ We continued to look for someone to help us before it was too late,

but it was useless.

We continued to watch to see if one of our allies would save us,

but none of the nations that we were waiting for was willing to help us.

¹⁸ Our enemies were pursuing us,

so we could not even walk in our streets because they could take us as prisoners.

Our enemies were about to capture us;

it was time for them to kill us.

ULB:

¹⁷ Our eyes failed, looking in vain for help;

from our watchtowers we watched

for a nation that could not rescue us.

¹⁸ They followed our steps,

we could not walk in our streets.

Our end was near and our days were numbered,

our end had come.

translationWords:

- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- nation
- save, safe

translationNotes:

- **Our eyes failed, looking in vain for help** - Possible meanings are 1) they looked for people to help them, but no help ever came or 2) they kept on looking for help from people who would never have been able to help them. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **They followed our steps** - AT: “Our enemies followed us everywhere we went” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Our end** - AT: “The time for us to die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Those who ran after us were faster than eagles flying in the sky.

Even if we fled to the mountains
or hid in the desert,
they went there ahead of us and waited to attack us.

²⁰ Our king, whom Yahweh had appointed,
the one who enabled us to live,
the one whom we trusted to protect us
when we had to live in the other nations as slaves—
the enemy captured him,
as you would capture an animal in a pit.

ULB:

¹⁹ Our pursuers were swifter than the eagles in the sky.

They chased us to the mountains and lay in wait for us in the wilderness.

²⁰ The breath in our nostrils—Yahweh’s anointed one—he was the one who
was captured in their pits;
of whom it was said, “Under his shadow we would live among the nations.”

translationWords:

- eagle
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- desert, wilderness
- breathe, breath
- Yahweh
- anoint, anointed
- king
- pit
- nation

translationNotes:

- **The breath in our nostrils** - This is a title for the king, who provides life to his people like breath keeps the body alive. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **was captured in their pits** - Here “pits” refers to the enemies’ trap, their plan to catch the king. AT: “the enemies made plans to capture our king, and they did capture him” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 4:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ You people of Edom and Uz,

you should be happy while you can,
but Yahweh will punish you also.

You will become so drunk that you will strip off your own clothes.

²² You people of Zion (whose home is in Jerusalem),

the time when Yahweh punishes you for your sins will come to an
end.

He will bring an end to the time you must spend in exile.

But you people who are from Edom, Yahweh will punish you for
your sins

and he will make known to everyone the wicked things you have
done.

ULB:

²¹ Rejoice and be glad, daughter of Edom,
you who live in the land of Uz.

But to you also the cup will be passed;
you will be drunk and strip yourself naked.

²² Daughter of Zion, your punishment will come to an end,

he will not extend your exile

But daughter of Edom, he will punish;

he will uncover your sins.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- drunk, drunkard
- guilt, guilty
- Daughter of Zion
- exile, the Exile

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

translationNotes:

- **Rejoice and be glad** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of gladness. The writer uses these words sarcastically. AT: “Be very glad.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Irony](#))
- **Daughter of Zion ... daughter of Edom** - These are poetic names for the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Edom, which are spoken of here as if they were woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **to you also the cup will be passed** - The wine that people will drink from the cup is a symbol of Yahweh’s anger. AT: “Yahweh will also judge you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **he will not extend your exile** - Here the word “he” refers to Yahweh.
- **uncover your sins** - “expose your sins”

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 04 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 04 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Judah was destroyed for her sin. As slaves, life was very hard. The author wondered if God would be angry forever. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [forever](#))

Links:

- [Lamentations 05:01 Notes](#)

Lamentations 5:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh, think about what has happened to us.

See how no one respects us any longer.

² Foreigners have seized our property,
and now they live in our homes.

³ Our enemies have killed our fathers,
and caused our mothers to become widows.

⁴ Now they make us pay for water to drink,
and pay for firewood.

ULB:

5 ¹ Remember, Yahweh, what has happened to us
look and see our disgrace.

² Our inheritance has been turned over to strangers;
our houses to foreigners.

³ We have become orphans, the fatherless,
and our mothers are like widows.

⁴ We must pay silver for the water we drink,
and we must pay silver to get our own wood.

translationWords:

- mind
- Yahweh
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- silver

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A new poem begins. See [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#).

- **Remember** - “Think about” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **look and see our disgrace** - “look at the shameful state we are in”
- **Our inheritance has been turned over to strangers** - “You have allowed strangers to take possession of our inheritance” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **our houses to foreigners** - “you have allowed foreigners to take possession of our houses” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **We have become orphans ... our mothers are like widows** - The people of Jerusalem have no one to protect them because the men have either died in battle or have gone into exile. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))
- **We must pay silver for the water we drink** - “We have to pay silver to our enemies in order to drink our own water”
- **we must pay silver to get our own wood** - “our enemies sell us our own wood” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ The enemy runs after us and is very close to us;

we are exhausted, but they do not allow us to rest.

⁶ In order to get enough food to remain alive,

we begged Egypt and Assyria to help us.

⁷ Our ancestors sinned, and now they are dead,

but we are suffering for the sins that they committed.

ULB:

⁵ Those who are coming after us are close behind us;

we are weary and we can find no rest.

⁶ We have given ourselves to Egypt and to Assyria

to get enough food.

⁷ Our fathers sinned, and they are no more,

and we bear their iniquities.

translationWords:

- rest
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- ancestor, father, forefather
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **Those who are coming after us** - The Babylonian army.
- **given ourselves to** - AT: “made a treaty with” or “surrendered to” (See: **Idiom**)
- **to get enough food** - AT: “so that we would have food to eat”
- **they are no more** - AT: “they have died” (See: **Euphemism**)
- **we bear their iniquities** - AT: “we bear the punishment for their sins” (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Now the people who rule over us are themselves slaves to their own masters in Babylon.

There is no one who can rescue us from their power.

⁹ We go far to look for food, but we are in danger of dying when we do so,
because of the robbers who live in the wilderness.

¹⁰ Our skin has become hot like an oven,
and we have a very high fever because we are extremely hungry.

ULB:

⁸ Slaves rule over us,
and there is no one to deliver us from their hand.

⁹ We get our bread only by risking our lives,
because of the sword in the wilderness.

¹⁰ Our skin has grown as hot as an oven
because of the burning heat of hunger.

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- ruler, rulers, rule
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- life, live, living, alive
- bread
- face
- sword
- desert, wilderness
- famine

translationNotes:

- **Slaves rule over us** - Possible meanings are 1) “Now the people who rule over us are themselves slaves to their own masters in Babylon” (UDB) or 2) “People who used to be slaves in Babylon now rule over us.”
- **to deliver us from their hand** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “to rescue us from their power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **because of the sword in the wilderness** - AT: “because there are people in the wilderness who kill others with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Our enemies have violated the women in Jerusalem,
and they have done that to the young women in all the towns of
Judea.

¹² Our enemies have hanged our leaders,
and they have not respected our elders.

ULB:

¹¹ Women are raped in Zion,
and virgins in the cities of Judah.

¹² Princes are hung up by their own hands,
and no honor is shown to the elders.

translationWords:

- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [elder](#)

translationNotes:

- **Women are raped in Zion ... virgins in the cities of Judah** - AT: "All the women, young and old, are raped in Jerusalem and in the cities of Judah" (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Princes are hung up by their own hands** - Possible meanings are 1) "With their own hands, they hung princes" or 2) they tied each prince's hands together with one end of a rope and tied the other end so the prince's feet could not touch the ground.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:13-14**UDB:**

- ¹³ They force our young men to grind flour with millstones,
and young boys stagger while they are forced to carry heavy loads
of firewood.
- ¹⁴ Our elders no longer sit at the city gates to make important decisions;
the young men no longer play their musical instruments.

ULB:

- ¹³ Young men are forced to grind grain with a millstone,
and boys stagger under heavy loads of wood.
- ¹⁴ The elders have left the city gate,
and the young men have left their music.

translationWords:

- **elder**
- **gate, gate bar**

translationNotes:

- **elders** - men who are no longer “vigorous men”
- **the city gate** - where the elders would give legal advice, but also where people would meet socially
- **their music** - part of social life at the city gate

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ We are no longer joyful;

instead of dancing joyfully, we now mourn.

¹⁶ The wreaths of flowers have fallen off our heads.

Terrible things have happened to us because of the sins that we committed.

ULB:

¹⁵ The joy of our heart has ceased
and our dancing has turned into mourning.

¹⁶ The crown has fallen from our head;
woe to us, for we have sinned!

translationWords:

- joy, joyful
- heart
- mourn, mourning
- crown, to crown
- woe
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **The crown has fallen from our head** - Possible meanings are 1) “We no longer wear flowers on our heads for celebrations” or 2) “We no longer have a king.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ We are tired and discouraged,

and we cannot see well because our eyes are full of tears.

¹⁸ Jerusalem has no one living any more in it,

and jackals prowl around in it.

ULB:

¹⁷ For this our heart has become sick,

and our eyes have grown dim,

for these things our eyes grow dim

¹⁸ for Mount Zion lies desolate, with jackals prowling over it.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)

translationNotes:

- **our eyes have grown dim** - AT: “we can hardly see because of our tears”
- **jackals** - See how you translated this in [4:3](#). Ruined, deserted places were thought to be inhabited by certain kinds of wild animals, including jackals.

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

Lamentations 5:19-22**UDB:**

¹⁹ But Yahweh, you rule forever!

You continue to rule from one generation to the next generation.

²⁰ So why have you forgotten us?

Will you abandon us for a very long time?

²¹ Please enable us to return to you,

and enable us to prosper as we did previously.

²² Please do that, or is it really true that you have rejected us forever?

Is it really true that you will never stop being extremely angry with us?

ULB:

¹⁹ But you, Yahweh, reign forever,

and you will sit upon your throne from generation to generation.

²⁰ Why do you forget us forever?

Why do you forsake us for so many days?

²¹ Restore us to yourself, Yahweh, and we will be restored.

Renew our days as they were long ago—

²² unless you have utterly rejected us

and you are angry with us beyond measure.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- reign
- forever
- throne
- generation
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- turn, turn away, turn back
- repent, repentance
- restore, restoration
- true, truth, come true
- reject
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **your throne** - “your power and authority to rule as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **from generation to generation** - AT: “always” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Why do you forget us forever? Why do you forsake us for so many days?** - AT: “It is as though you will forget us forever or not come back to us for a very long time!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Renew our days as they were long ago** - AT: “Make our lives good, like they used to be” or “Make us as great as we used to be” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **unless you have utterly rejected us and you are angry with us beyond measure** - Possible meanings are 1) that the writer is afraid that Yahweh might be too angry to restore them or 2) that he is saying that Yahweh is too angry to restore them (UDB). (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Lamentations](#)
- [Lamentations 05 General Notes](#)
- [Lamentations 05 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Lamentations 1

Q? What has the city of Jerusalem become like even though she was once a mighty nation?

A. The city has become like a widow. [1:1]

Q? What can Judah not find even though she lives among the nations?

A. Judah can find no rest even though she lives among the nations. [1:3]

Q? Why has Yahweh afflicted the city of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh has afflicted the city of Jerusalem because of her many sins. [1:5]

Q? What has left the daughter of Zion?

A. Beauty has left the daughter of Zion. [1:6]

Q? What did Jerusalem have in former days that she now calls to mind?

A. Jerusalem recalls all her precious treasures that she had in former days. [1:7]

Q? Because Jerusalem sinned greatly, what has she become like?

A. Jerusalem has become like a menstrual rag. [1:8]

Q? What has Jerusalem seen enter her sanctuary even though Yahweh had commanded that they must not enter?

A. Jerusalem has seen the nations enter her sanctuary. [1:10]

Q? What do the people do as they search for bread?

A. The people groan as they search for bread. [1:11]

Q? What has Yahweh spread before the feet of Jerusalem to turn her back?

A. Yahweh has spread a net before the feet of Jerusalem. [1:13]

Q? What has failed because of the yoke of Jerusalem's transgressions that are knit together and placed on her neck?

A. Jerusalem's strength has failed because of the yoke of her transgressions placed on her neck. [1:14]

Q? Like what has the Lord trampled the virgin daughter of Judah?

A. The Lord has trampled the virgin daughter of Judah like grapes in a wine press. [1:15]

Q? Why are Jerusalem's children desolate?

A. Jerusalem's children are desolate because the enemy has triumphed. [1:16]

Q? Who have gone into captivity because Jerusalem rebelled against Yahweh's commandment?

A. Jerusalem's virgins and vigorous men have gone into captivity. [1:18]

Q? Who perished in the city while they sought food to restore their lives?

A. Jerusalem's priests and elders perished in the city. [1:19]

Q? What is turned within Jerusalem because she grievously rebelled?

A. Jerusalem's heart is turned within her. [1:20]

Q? What do the enemies of Jerusalem do when they hear of her adversity?

A. The enemies of Jerusalem rejoice. [1:21]

Q? What does Jerusalem request Yahweh to do to her enemies as they come before Yahweh?

A. Jerusalem asks that Yahweh would torment her enemies as Yahweh has tormented her for all her transgressions. [1:22]

Lamentations 2

Q? How does the Lord express his anger because of Jeremiah's rebellion?

A. He has taken away the beauty of Israel, has no compassion for the towns of Jacob, and has struck down the fortified cities of Judah. [2:1-2]

Q? How does his anger affect Israel and Zion?

A. The Lord has removed all of Israel's strength and poured his wrath on Zion. [2:3-4]

Q? How is the Lord's anger shown?

A. The Lord has become like an enemy, he destroyed the palace and the tabernacle, and has despised both king and priest. [2:5-6]

Q? Why does the enemy feel victorious?

A. They feel victorious because the Lord rejected his altar and has given the walls of the palace over to them. [2:7]

Q? What has happened to the gates and bars of Zion?

A. Her gates have sunk into the ground, and Yahweh has destroyed and broken her gate bars. [2:9]

Q? How do the elders and virgins show they are grieving?

A. The elders sit on the ground, sprinkle their heads with dust while dressed in sackcloth. The virgins lower their heads to the ground. [2:10]

Q? Why is Jeremiah lamenting?

A. Because there is nothing for his people to eat or drink. [2:11-12]

Q? What do the mockers do as they pass through the city?

A. They clap their hands, hiss and shake their heads, they whistle and grind their teeth. [2:15-16]

Q? How do the people show their remorse?

A. They cry out to the Lord and lift their hands to him for the sake of their children. [2:18-19]

Q? Why are the people begging for Yahweh's mercy?

A. Because he has dealt with them so severely, they are hungry, and they are concerned about their priests being slaughtered. [2:20]

Q? How does Jeremiah describe the day of Yahweh's wrath?

A. On the day of Yahweh's wrath, Yahweh killed young and old, no one survived, and he showed no compassion. [2:21-22]

Lamentations 3

Q? What does the writer say that Yahweh has turned against him all the day?

A. Yahweh's hand is turned against him all the day. [3:3]

Q? What does the writer say that Yahweh has built around him so that he cannot escape?

A. Yahweh has built a wall around him. [3:7]

Q? To what animal does the writer compare Yahweh and say that it is waiting to ambush him?

A. The writer describes Yahweh as a bear that is waiting to ambush him. [3:10]

Q? What has the writer become to all his people?

A. The writer has become a laughingstock to all his people. [3:14]

Q? What can the writer no longer remember since Yahweh has removed peace from his life?

A. The writer can no longer remember any happiness. [3:17]

Q? What is the writer's mood as he calls to mind his affliction?

A. The writer's mood is one of despair within himself as he calls to mind his affliction. [3:19-20]

Q? What does the writer say occurs afresh every morning?

A. The writer says that Yahweh's merciful actions occur afresh every morning. [3:23]

Q? What is Yahweh like toward the one who waits for him and to those who wait in silence for the salvation of Yahweh?

A. Yahweh is good to those who wait for him, and wait in silence for Yahweh's salvation. [3:25-26]

Q? How should a person sit because Yahweh has laid it upon him?

A. A person should sit alone and silent because Yahweh has laid it upon him. [03:]

Q? What does Yahweh show, even though he brings grief?

A. Yahweh shows compassion even though he brings grief. [3:32]

Q? From where does Yahweh not oppress or torment the sons of men?

A. Yahweh does not oppress from his heart or torment the sons of men. [3:33]

Q? What two things come out of the mouth of the Most High?

A. Calamity and success come out of the mouth of the Most High. [3:38]

Q? What should the people lift up to God in the heavens when they test and examine their ways and turn back to Yahweh?

A. The people should lift up their hearts and their hands to God in the heavens. [3:40-41]

Q? What should the people admit that they have done against Yahweh as they pray?

A. They should admit that they have sinned and rebelled against Yahweh. [3:42]

Q? What does the writer say that Yahweh has made them to be among the peoples?

A. Yahweh has made them to be castoffs and refuse among the peoples. [3:45]

Q? How does the writer describe the tears that flow from his eyes?

A. His tears are streams of water that flow out from his eyes. [3:48-49]

Q? What does the writer say as his enemies hunt him and destroy his life in a well and place a stone over him?

A. He says, "I have been cut off!" [3:52-54]

Q? What did Yahweh tell the writer when he called on Yahweh's name and asked Yahweh to hear his cry for help?

A. Yahweh told him, "Do not fear!" [3:55-57]

Q? How does the writer ask Yahweh to judge his case?

A. He asks Yahweh to judge his case justly. [3:59]

Q? Of what is the writer the object from his enemies, whether in their sitting or their rising up?

A. He is the object of their mocking song. [3:63]

Q? What does the writer ask Yahweh to do to his enemies?

A. He asks Yahweh to pay back to them as much harm as what their hands have done. [3:64]

Q? What does the writer ask Yahweh to do to his enemies?

A. he asks Yahweh to pursue his enemies in his anger and destroy them everywhere under the heavens. [3:66]

Lamentations 4

Q? What has become of the gold and the holy stones?

A. The gold has become completely tarnished, the purest gold has changed and the holy stones have been poured out at the head of every street. [4:1]

Q? What were the sons of Zion, and how are they now valued?

A. The sons of Zion were precious, valued greater than pure gold, but now they are regarded as clay jars made by potter's hands. [4:2]

Q? How do the daughters of his people act?

A. They are as cruel as the ostrich in the desert. [4:3]

Q? What happens to the tongue of the nursing baby and what are the children asking for?

A. The tongue of the nursing baby sticks to the roof of his mouth with thirst and the children are asking for bread but there is nothing for them. [4:4]

Q? What has happened to the ones who used to eat expensive food and those who wore scarlet clothing?

A. The ones who used to eat expensive food are now abandoned and starving, and the ones who wore scarlet clothing are now on top of the garbage heaps. [4:5]

Q? How great is the iniquity of the daughter of his people?

A. The iniquity of the daughter is greater than the sin of Sodom. [4:6]

Q? What were her leaders like before, and how are they now?

A. Her leaders were like snow that shines, they were as white as milk, their bodies were more ruddy than coral, and their form like sapphire. Now darkness has blackened their appearance, they are unrecognizable, and their skin clings to their withered bones. [4:7-8]

Q? What does Jeremiah say about those who have been killed by hunger compared to those killed by the sword?

A. Jeremiah says that those killed by the sword are better off than those killed by hunger. [4:9]

Q? What did the compassionate women do with their children?

A. They boiled their own children and the children became their food. [4:10]

Q? How did Yahweh satisfy his rage?

A. Yahweh satisfied his rage when he poured out his burning anger, kindled a fire in Zion, and devoured her foundations. [4:11]

Q? What did the kings and the inhabitants of the world not believe could happen to Jerusalem?

A. They did not believe that an enemy could enter the gates of Jerusalem. [4:12]

Q? What did the enemy do because of the sins of the prophets and the iniquities of the priests?

A. The enemy entered the gates of Jerusalem. [4:13]

Q? What happened to those prophets and priests?

A. They wandered like blind men in the streets and were defiled by that blood so no one was able to touch their clothes. [4:14]

Q? What did the prophets and priests cry out?

A. The prophets and the priests cried out and said to flee and to not touch them. [4:15]

Q? Where did the prophets and the priests go?

A. They wandered to other lands where the Gentiles said they could not live there any longer. [4:15]

Q? What did Yahweh do to the prophets and the priests?

A. Yahweh scattered the prophets and priests and does not look on them with favor any longer. [4:16]

Q? How are the priests received and how are the elders received?

A. The priests are not respected anymore and the elders are not shown any concern. [4:16]

Q? What failed to find worthless help?

A. Their eyes failed to find help. [4:17]

Q? What did the enemy do to them?

A. They hunted their steps going through their streets. [4:18]

Q? What did the people say about their end?

A. They said their end was near, their days were finished, and their end had come. [4:18]

Q? How did the people describe the pursuers, and what did the pursuers do to them?

A. The pursuers were swifter than the eagles and chased them to the mountains and lay in wait for them in the wilderness. [4:19]

Q? What happened to their king?

A. Their king was captured in the enemy's pits. [4:20]

Q? Why is the daughter of Edom told to rejoice and be glad?

A. She is told to rejoice and be glad for the cup will pass to her and she will be drunk and strip naked. [4:21]

Q? What is the daughter of Zion told?

A. She is told her guilt is ended and Yahweh will no longer keep her in exile. [4:22]

Q? What is the daughter of Edom told?

A. The daughter of Edom is told Yahweh will punish her guilt and will uncover her sins. [4:22]

Lamentations 5

Q? What does Jeremiah ask Yahweh to do?

A. Jeremiah asks Yahweh to call to mind what has happened to them and to see their shame. [5:1]

Q? What does Jeremiah tell Yahweh has happened to their inheritance?

A. Jeremiah tells Yahweh that their inheritance has been turned over to strangers, and their houses to foreigners. [5:2]

Q? How does Jeremiah describe what is happening to them?

A. Their enemies run after them, they are weary, and they have reached out to the Egyptians and Assyrians for food. [5:5-6]

Q? What are the people saying about sin?

A. They are saying their fathers sinned and they bear their fathers' sins. [5:7]

Q? What are the people saying about the slaves?

A. The people are saying the slaves rule over them and there is no one to rescue them. [5:8]

Q? How do they describe themselves when they go out to get bread?

A. They risk their lives to get bread in the face of the sword in the wilderness. [5:9]

Q? How do they describe their skin?

A. Their skin is like an oven and burnt up from the fever of famine. [5:10]

Q? What happened to the women and virgins?

A. The women of Zion and the virgins of the cities of Judah were raped. [5:11]

Q? What happened to the princes and the elders?

A. The princes were hung by their hands and the elders were not honored. [5:12]

Q? What happened to the vigorous men and youthful men?

A. The vigorous men were brought up to the grinding house and the youthful men staggered beneath logs. [5:13]

Q? What happened to the elders and the vigorous men?

A. The elders were removed from the city gate and the vigorous men from their music. [5:14]

Q? How do they describe the joy of their heart, their dances, and their crown?

A. Their joy has ceased, their dances have changed into mourning, and the crown has fallen from their head. [5:15-16]

Q? What do they say about their hearts and eyes?

A. Their hearts have become sick and their eyes have grown dim. [5:17]

Q? What do they say about Yahweh's reign and throne?

A. Yahweh reigns forever and his throne is from generation to generation. [5:19]

Q? What do they ask Yahweh?

A. They ask Yahweh whether he is forgetting them forever, and if he will turn them back to him. [5:20-21]

translationWords

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anoint, anointed

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

astray, go astray, led astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

avenge, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression, “to avenge” someone could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by, “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

to bear**Facts:**

The term “to bear” literally means “to carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means, “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit” which means, “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means to “testify” or to “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as, “to carry” or “to be responsible for” or “to produce” or “to have” or “to endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [endurance](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [religious leaders](#), [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-11]** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **[38-06]** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ... Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **[38-13]** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **[38-14]** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **[39-08]** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as, “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase, “bond of peace” means, “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as, “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as, “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translate as, “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow**Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

breathe, breath

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

captive, captivity**Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Daughter of Zion

Definition:

“Daughter of Zion” is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

- In the Old Testament, “Zion” is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
- Both “Zion” and “Jerusalem” are also used to refer to Israel.
- The term “Daughter” is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this could include, “my daughter Israel, from Zion” or “people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me” or “Zion, my dear people Israel.”
- It is best to keep the term “Zion” in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
- It is also better to keep the term “Daughter” in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: [Jerusalem](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

desolate, desolation

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devour**Definition:**

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

disgrace, disgraceful

Facts:

The term “disgrace” refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term “disgraceful” is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun, “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **[14-12]** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **[15-13]** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **[17-09]** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **[49-17]** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **[50-04]** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

famine**Definition:**

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fire**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

footstool**Definition:**

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

Waiting

foreigner, foreign, alien

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grape

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **[21-10]** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **[26-06]** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **[26-08]** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **[32-14]** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **[44-03]** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **[49-02]**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **[14-11]** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **[23-07]** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **[29-09]** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **[37-09]** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **[42-11]** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- [13-02]”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- [13-05]”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- [22-05]”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

lament, lamentation**Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-05] But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- [25-07] Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- [26-03] This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- [31-05] Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- [43-09] “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- [47-03] By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- [47-11] Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lover

Definition:

The term “lover” literally means “person who loves.” Usually this refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.

- When the term “lover” is used in the Bible, it usually refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he is not married to.
- This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel’s disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term “lovers” is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by, “immoral partners” or “partners in adultery” or “idols.” [See Metaphor]
- A “lover” of money is someone who puts too much importance on getting money and being rich.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, the term “lover” is used in a positive way.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [love](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mock, ridicule, scoff at

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Most High

Facts:

The term, “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as, “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean, “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be, “the most honored.”
- This expression can also be used literally, as in the expression, “in the highest tree” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression, “on high” can also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as, “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” also indicates the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pardon

Definition:

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions

- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated in the same way as “forgive” and “forgiveness.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

perfect**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

Waiting

perish, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as, “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

rage

Facts:

Rage is excessive anger which is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit acts and say things which are destructive.
- The term “to rage” can also refer to powerful movements, such as a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- The “nations rage” refers to ungodly people who disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#), [self-control](#),

Bible References:

Waiting

rebel, rebellious, rebellion

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

rest**Definition:**

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

restore, restoration**Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” is often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as, “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used as a tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern day church.

(See also: [Biblical Money](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- **[49-12]** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **[49-13]** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

seize

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

siege, besiege

Definition:

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but may not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of this is the Bible’s mention of snow on Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is white is often compared to the color of snow, as when Jesus’ clothing or hair is described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes being pure and clean. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God completely cleanses his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well-watered and fertile, so that is where Lot chose to live when he first settled in Caanan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take apart the tabernacle and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when Solomon's temple in Jerusalem was built.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: , [altar](#), [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- The term "tempt" is also used to refer to tempting God, which means to stubbornly keep disobeying him to the point that he must respond by punishing the disobedient ones. This is also called "testing" God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- In the context of tempting God, this could be translated as, "put God to the test" or "test God" or "try God's patience" or "cause God to have to punish" or "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-01] Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- [25-08] Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test**Definition:**

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

torment**Facts:**

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause someone to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering also may take the form of spiritual and emotional pain as experienced by Job.
- According to the book of Revelation, people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as, “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trial**Definition:**

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Other words for this are “testing” or “temptation.”
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#), [test](#), [innocent](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Mary](#), [the mother of Jesus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice**Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

watch, watchman**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

Waiting

well, cistern

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include, “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

Waiting

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain***. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham**. (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
 - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Apostrophe

This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Reason this is a translation issue: Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
 - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Hypothetical Situations

This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

3. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jIbY2ikNtHU>).

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophesy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
 - **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
 - **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.
 - **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Poetry

This answers the question: What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

Poetry combines figures of speech with pleasant sounds and deep feelings to make a passage both beautiful and easier to remember.

Description

Poetry is one of various way in which to use words to make the writing more beautiful and to show the feeling. It is used to express a stronger emotional feeling than simple non-poetic forms would express. Poetry is easier to remember and tends to last longer than ordinary speech.

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as **Metaphor**, **Simile**, **Metonymy**, **Personification**, and **Apostrophe**.
- Parallel lines (See: **Parallelism** and **Parallelism with the Same Meaning**)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
 - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
 - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
 - "Twinkle, twinkle little *star*. How I wonder what you *are*." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
 - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is the probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of **Parallelism with the Same Meaning** has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See: **Parallelism**)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See: **Personification**)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

”Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.
God is his constant *delight*
He does what God says *is right*
He thinks of it all day *and night*”

2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- “This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.”

3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- “The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Symbolic Language*